OWNER´S MANUAL

Vehicle and Infotainment
ŠKODA FABIA



ŠKODA

Documentation of vehicle delivery

Date of vehicle delivery[a] ☐☐ / ☐☐ / ☐☐☐☐

ŠKODA Partner

Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty? Yes ☐ No ☐

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[b]

Years: _____ or km/mile-age: _____

or. miles: _____

[a] Due to the requirements of the country-specific regulations which are generally binding, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

[b] Depending on which comes first.

6V0012720AK

1. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number
(To be filled in by the vendor)
belongs to:

Title, Name / Company:

Address:

Telephone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service consultant:

Telephone:

2. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number
belongs to:

Title, Name / Company:

Address:

Telephone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service consultant:

Telephone:

6V0012720AK

Useful links

Before starting off

Adjusting the seat	» page 70
Adjusting the steering wheel	» page 19
Exterior mirrors	» page 69
Headlights/lights	» page 60
Windscreen wipers and washers	» page 67
Heating and ventilation	» page 91
Heated windscreen	» page 66

Instrument cluster

Warning lights	» page 37
Display operation	» page 47
Time setting	» page 46

Unlocking and opening

Keyless unlocking (KESSY)	» page 53
Luggage compartment lid	» page 57
Power windows	» page 58
Bonnet	» page 210

Connectivity

Online Services – ŠKODA Connect	» page 12
SmartLink+	» page 138
Connecting Infotainment to the Internet	» page 136
Hotspot (WLAN)	» page 137
Making telephone calls	» page 129
Configuration wizard	» page 101

Driving

Automatic gearbox	» page 168
Braking and stabilizing systems	» page 173
START STOP system	» page 164
Adaptive cruise control	» page 185

Parking

Parking the vehicle	» page 167
Parking aid	» page 175
Reversing camera	» page 181

Care and maintenance

Service intervals	» page 50
Tyre pressure	» page 217
Washing the vehicle	» page 204
Folding the windscreen wiper arms securely	» page 232

Inspecting and replenishing

Refuelling	» page 208
Engine oil	» page 211
Windscreen washer fluid	» page 211

Emergencies

Emergency call	» page 15
Vehicle tool kit	» page 222
Lamp replacement	» page 237
Replacing fuses	» page 234
Changing a wheel	» page 222
Jump-starting	» page 228
Towing the vehicle	» page 229

Interesting tips

Electronic version of the Owner's Manual	» page 9
Tutorial videos	» page 10

Table of Contents

Liability for defects and ŠKODA warranty for new cars 6

Radio equipment - Information on Directive 2014/53/EU 8

About the Owner's Manual

Introductory information 9
- General 9
- Printed Owner's Manual 9
- Electronic version of the Owner's Manual 9
- Tutorial videos 10
- Application MyŠKODA App 10
- Notes 11

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect 12
- Service package“ŠKODA Connect” 12
- “ŠKODA Connect” website 12
- User and vehicle registration, activation of online services 12
- Managing online services 14
- Emergency call 15
- “Care Connect” Services 16
- “Infotainment Online” services 17

Safety

Passive Safety 18
- General information 18
- Correct and safe seating position 18

Seat belts 21
- Wearing seat belts 21
- Inertia reel and belt pre-tensioners 23

Airbag system 24
- Description of the airbag system 24
- Airbag deactivation 26

Transporting children safely 28
- Child seat 28
- Fastening systems 31

Operation

cockpit 35
- Overview 34

Instruments and warning lights 36
- Instrument cluster 36
- Warning lights 37

Information system 45
- Driver information system 45
- Operation of the information system 47
- Driving data (Multifunction display) 48
- MAXI DOT display 49
- Service intervals 50

Unlocking and opening 52
- Unlocking and locking 52
- Anti-theft alarm system 56
- Boot lid 57
- Window operation 58

Lights and visibility 60
- Light 60
- Interior lighting 64
- Visibility 65
- Windscreen wipers and washers 66
- Rear view mirror 68

Seats and head restraints 70
- Front seats 70
- Rear seats 70
- Headrests 72
- Front seat heater 72

Useful features 73
- Passenger compartment features 73
- Electrical sockets 79
- Ashtray and cigarette lighter 79
- Tablet holder 80

Transport of cargo 82
- Luggage compartment and transporting objects 82
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment 89
- Transportation on the roof rack 90

Heating and ventilation 91
- Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic 91

Infotainment

Introductory information 95
- Important information 95
- Infotainment overview 95

Infotainment operation 97
- Infotainment operation 97
- Voice control 102
- Updating the Infotainment software 104

Infotainment settings - Amundsen 105
- Infotainment system settings 105
- Radio menu settings 107
- Media menu settings 108
- Image menu settings 108
- Telephone menu settings 108
- SmartLink+ menu settings 109
- Navigation menu settings 109

Infotainment settings – Swing 111
Infotainment system settings 111
Radio menu settings 112
Media menu settings 113
Telephone menu settings 113
SmartLink+ menu settings 113

Infotainment settings – Blues 114
Infotainment system settings 114
Radio menu settings 114
Media menu settings 114

Radio 115
Operation 115

Media 119
Operation 119
Audio sources 122

Images 126
Image viewer 126

Media Command 127
Using the system 127

Telephone 129
Introductory information 129
Pairing and connecting 130
Telephone functions 132
Text messages (SMS) 135

Data connection 136
Internet connection 136
Connecting via the CarStick device 136
Connecting via WLAN 137

SmartLink+ 138
Introductory information 138
Android Auto 139
Apple CarPlay 140
MirrorLink® 141
Application“ŠKODA OneApp” 142

Navigation 143
Introductory information 143
Search for destination and enter 145
Saved destinations 149
Import custom destinations 150
Map 152
Route guidance 154
Route 157
Traffic reports 159

Vehicle systems 161
CAR - Vehicle settings 161

Driving

Starting-off and driving 162
Starting and stopping the engine 162
START-STOP system 164
Braking and parking 166
Manual gear shifting and pedals 167
Automatic transmission 168
Running in and economical driving 170
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 171

Assist systems 172
General information 172
Braking and stabilisation systems 173
Parking aid (ParkPilot) 175
Rear traffic alert and wizard for “Blind spot”Monitoring 178
Reversing camera 181
Cruise Control System 182
Speed limiter 184
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 185
Front Assist 190
Fatigue detection system 193
Tyre pressure monitoring 193

Towing device and trailer 195
Hitch 195
Using hitch 199

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 202
Service work, adjustments and technical alterations 202
Cleaning and care 203

Inspecting and replenishing 208
Fuel 208
Engine compartment 209
Engine oil 211
Coolant 212
Brake fluid 214
Vehicle battery 214

Wheels 217
Wheels and tyres 217
Operating in winter conditions 219

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help 221
Emergency equipment 221
Changing a wheel 222
Breakdown kit 226
Jump-starting 228
Towing the vehicle 229
Remote control and removable light - changing the battery 230

Emergency unlocking/locking of doors 231
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 232

Fuses and light bulbs 234
Fuses 234
Bulbs 237

Technical data

Technical data 243
Basic vehicle data 243
Vehicle-specific details per engine type 247

Index

Liability for defects and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO will provide the following services.

- Free repair of faulty components or vehicle defects that occur within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of paint work defects on your vehicle that occur within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only corrosion of body panels from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of warranty is the date on which the new car is handed over to the initial purchaser by the ŠKODA Partner[1]. The ŠKODA Partner must insert this date into the manufacturer's systems accordingly for your car identified by the Vehicle Identification Number.

Vehicle repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by repairing it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

The ŠKODA warranty is valid at any ŠKODA service partner.

A prerequisite for carrying out work under the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and technically correct manner and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions when making a claim on the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions was not the cause of the defect.

ŠKODA warranty excludes parts that are subject to natural wear such as tyres, spark plugs, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchroniser rings, batteries etc. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third-parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that were not installed and/or delivered ex-factory.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the defect was caused by one of the following.

- Unauthorised use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unauthorised modifications to your vehicle.
- Non-compliance with instructions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.).
- Parts fitted or connected on or in the vehicle whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that he/she is not the cause of the damage.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

[1] Due to the requirements of the country-specific regulations which are generally binding, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

Mobility warranty
The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

As part of the mobility warranty, if your car breaks down as a result of an unexpected fault when you are on the move, you can access services to ensure your continued mobility. These services include the following: Breakdown service at the breakdown location and towing to the ŠKODA Service Partner, technical assistance by phone or on-site operation.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage in place for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a supplementary agreement.

Optional ŠKODA extended warranty
If you opted for a ŠKODA extended warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty with regards to all free warranty repairs is extended by the period you chose or until the chosen mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The paint warranty and the warranty against corrosion described above are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA extended warranty does not apply to external and internal foils.

The information on the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA extended warranty is provided by your ŠKODA partner.

i Note
The ŠKODA extended warranty is only available in some countries.

Radio equipment - Information on Directive 2014/53/EU



Fig. 1
ŠKODA websites

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

The manufacturers of these radio systems declare that these systems comply with the requirements of Directive 2014/53/EU.

To display **Information on Directive 2014/53 / EU and the Declaration of Conformity** proceed as follows.

1. Scan the QR code » Fig. 1 **or** enter the following address in your web browser.
   http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals
2. Click on “Choose your manual”.
3. Select the desired model - a menu with the manuals is displayed.
4. Select the construction period as well as the language.
5. Select the **Information on Directive 2014/53 / EU** file in **pdf** format.

About the Owner's Manual

Introductory information

General

Read this Owner's Manual carefully, because operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the general binding country-specific legal requirements (e.g. transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic, etc.) must always be observed.

Always pay attention when driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

The Owner's Manual applies to all **body variants** of the vehicle, all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

The Owner's Manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in the Owner's Manual.

The range of equipment installed in your vehicle depends on the purchase contract for the vehicle. For any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **pictures** in the Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Each time, therefore, any changes to the vehicle occur, the scope of delivery may change in terms of its equipment and technology. The information listed in the Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in the Owner's Manual.

We recommend that the **web pages** that are referred to in the Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. Not all necessary information may be displayed correctly if the mobile view is chosen.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual includes the most important information relating to vehicle operation. For complete information, see the electronic version of the Owner's Manual.

Electronic version of the Owner's Manual



Fig. 2
ŠKODA websites

The electronic version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The electronic version of the Owner's Manual is available on the ŠKODA website and in the MyŠKODA App mobile application.

Displaying the electronic version of the Owner's Manual

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 2 **or** enter the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

› Click on “Choose your manual”.
› Select the desired model.
› Select the construction period as well as the language.
› Select the desired Owner's Manual.

Tutorial videos



Fig. 3
Tutorial videos

The operation of some vehicle functions can be displayed in the form of video instructions.

Show menu with video instructions

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 3 **or** enter the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals-videos

Note

The video instructions are only available in some language versions.

Application MyŠKODA App

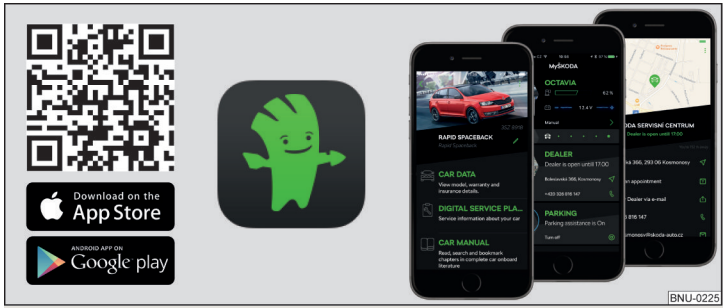


Fig. 4 **The MyŠKODA App application is available for devices with the Android (Google) or iOS (Apple) operating system.**

The MyŠKODA App application contains, for example, the electronic version of the Owner's Manual, quick tips regarding how to resolve certain situations in relation to the vehicle or a description of the Simply Clever solutions.

You can use this application to get in touch with a ŠKODA partner and to use its services or to access the breakdown service quickly.

The application can also be used as an RSS reader of favourite websites.

After entering the following address into the web browser, the website is opened with information on the ŠKODA mobile applications.

http://go.skoda.eu/service-app

Installing the MyŠKODA App application

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 4 .

Notes

Terms used

“Specialist garage” - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner or an independent workshop.

“ŠKODA service partners” - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to service ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

“ŠKODA partners” - A company that has been authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

“Press” - Short press (e.g. a button) within 1 s

“Hold” - Long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 s

Direction indications

All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Explanation of symbols

M Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

S Text display in the segment display

→ Marker to the next operation step

Repeatedly pressing the button

WARNING

Texts with this symbol warn of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Service package“ŠKODA Connect”

The “ŠKODA Connect” online services extend the vehicle and Infotainment functions with the “Care Connect” and “Infotainment Online” service packages.

“ŠKODA Connect” online services are not included in the vehicle delivery. Their order is made separately via the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” » page 12, *Website “ŠKODA Connect Portal”*. Rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement.

“Care Connect” online services
“Care Connect” services include the following features.

- Emergency, information and breakdown call.
- Proactive service offering to connect with your ŠKODA service partner.
- Remote access to the vehicle using the “ŠKODA Connect” application and the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website.

For the function of “Care Connect”Services, the vehicle must be within range of a mobile network, through which the “Care Connect”Services are provided.

“Infotainment Online” online services
The “Infotainment Online” services extend the Infotainment functions, e.g. with the following functions.

- Weather forecast.
- Filling station search with information on fuel prices.
- Online traffic information.
- Online destination search.

The Infotainment must be connected to the Internet for the “Infotainment Online” Services to work» page 136.

Terms of use and availability of services
Current **“conditions for the use of the user account”** incl. **“declaration on the protection of personal data”** can be found on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website » page 12, *Website “ŠKODA Connect Portal”*.

The availability of the services is dependent on the type of vehicle and on the type of Infotainment system installed in the vehicle. Some services are available only in certain countries.

Note
The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this interim period of validity, content changes of these services are possible.

“ŠKODA Connect” website



Fig. 5 **Starting the ŠKODA Connect website**

The “ŠKODA Connect” website contains information about the online services and their functions, access to the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website, as well as the option to download the “ŠKODA Connect” application.

The “ŠKODA Connect” website can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 5 **or** by entering the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

User and vehicle registration, activation of online services

Website “ŠKODA Connect Portal”



Fig. 6 **Starting the ŠKODA Connect Portal website**

The use of the “ŠKODA Connect” online services requires prior user and vehicle registration on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website as well as activation of online services in the Infotainment system.

The “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 6 **or** by entering the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Information on registering for and activating online services



Fig. 7 **Instructional video on registration and activation of services**



Fig. 8 **Electronic version of the instructions for registration and activation of services**

Instructional video on registration and activation of services
Registration and activation are carried out in accordance with the instruction video.

The instruction video can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 7 **or** entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-video

Electronic version of the instructions for registration and activation of services
Current information on **registration and activation** of Online Services can be found in the **electronic version** of the instructions for the Online Services on the “ŠKODA Connect” website.

The electronic version of the instructions can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 8 **or** by entering the following address in the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-manual

Note
For help with registration, activation as well as the Internet connection, please contact a ŠKODA service partner.

Activation in Infotainment

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)** → **Registration**.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during user and vehicle registration on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website.
› Wait until the message **Registration complete.** is displayed (can take several minutes)
› Confirm the message.

Note
- Availability of a GPS signal and a mobile network is required for activation.
- In vehicles that only have “Infotainment Online” Services, a GPS signal must be available and the Infotainment must be connected to the Internet for activation.
- The list of services can be displayed » page 14, *Display of service management*.

Deleting/switching the vehicle user

Deleting the user
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)** → **Registration**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete owner** → **Delete** and confirm the delete process.

Changing the user

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)** → **Registration**.
› Tap the function surface **New owner** → **Transfer ownership**.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during registration of the new user and during vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
› If necessary, confirm the change of user by tapping the function surface **Change main users**.

Note

By deleting the registered vehicle in the user account on the "ŠKODA Connect Portal" website, the user is also deleted in the Infotainment system.

Managing online services

Display of service management

In Services Management, it is possible to display information about the online services, the validity of their license, or to switch the services on/off.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management**.
› To **display the designations and the status of the services**, select the desired service.
› For **detailed information about the service** tap the function surface > .
› To **switch the services on/off**, tap the function surface with "Checkbox".

Switch online services on/off in infotainment

Switching Private mode function on/off

By switching the **Private mode** function on, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of services, are deactivated.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management** → **Private mode**.

Switching "Care Connect" services on/off

By switching the "Care Connect" services off, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of services, are deactivated.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management** → **Care Connect**.

Switching "Infotainment Online" services on/off

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management** → **Infotainment Online**.

Note

The **emergency call** remains fully functional after activation of the **Private mode** function or after deactivation of "Care Connect" services. The functions of the **information and breakdown call** are limited.

Online services at ŠKODA Switch service partner off/on

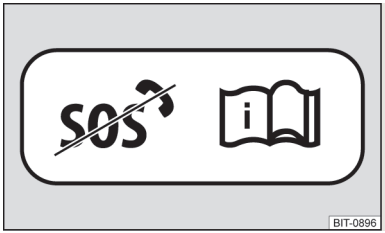


Fig. 9
Sticker with the information about the switched-off online services

It is possible to have the online services switched off/on exclusively by one ŠKODA service partner.

After turning off the online services, none of the "ŠKODA Connect" online services are functioning.

To inform the vehicle user that the "ŠKODA Connect" online services, including the emergency call are out of order, the service partner **attaches the sticker** » Fig. 9 **at** a visible point in the vehicle (e.g. at the roof cladding). This **Sticker should not be removed** as long as the online services are off.

CAUTION

It should be noted that the emergency, information and panning call is not available after switching off the online services. For this reason, no automatic emergency call is made in the event of a serious car accident.

Status Symbols of Online Services



Fig. 10
Status symbols of online services

In the Infotainment » Fig. 10 status line, information on the status of the Online Services is displayed.

A The "ŠKODA Connect" online services are available. At the same time the symbol of the connected network type can be displayed.

B The connection to the "ŠKODA Connect" online services is being established.

C Localisation services are restricted or disabled. Detailed information about online services can be displayed » page 14, *Display of service management*.

D Localisation services are enabled. Detailed information about online services can be displayed » page 14, *Display of service management*.

localisation services

For the complete functionality of some online services, activated localisation services are required.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

When localisation services are active, one of the following symbols will be displayed in the status line in the Infotainment screen D » Fig. 10.

Emergency call

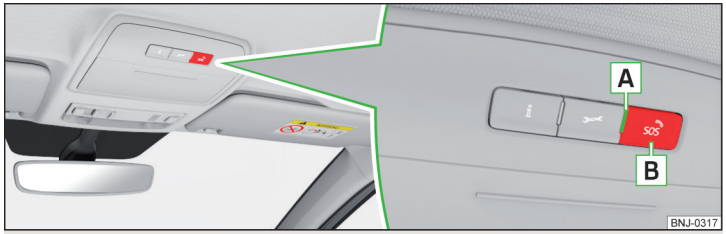


Fig. 11 **Emergency call button**

Automatic start of a call with the emergency call centre

In the event of an accident, a call is **automatically** started with the emergency call centre. The emergency call centre simultaneously receives information on the accident, e.g. the location and severity of the accident, the number of occupants in the front seats with fastened seatbelts and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Manual start of a call with the emergency call centre

› Press and hold the B » Fig. 11 button.
› In the Infotainment screen or on the instrument cluster display, confirm the connection setup.

The call can be started manually, for example, if you are reporting an accident in which you were not directly involved.

The **system status** is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp A » Fig. 11.

▸ Green - the system is functional.
▸ Red - there is a fault in the system.
▸ Not lit - the system is switched off » page 14,

Note

The emergency service is functional even without user registration and activation of services.

“Care Connect” Services

Proactive service

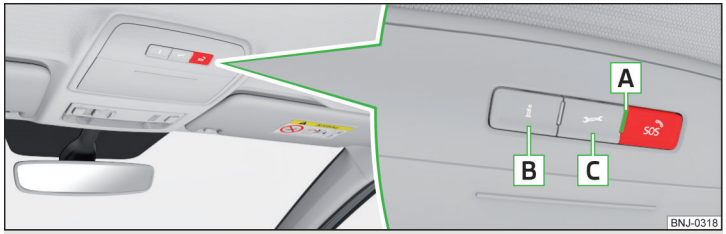


Fig. 12 **Buttons and warning lights of the Care Connect services**

The **proactive service** provides an overview of the technical status of your vehicle and on any due service events. It is also possible to establish a connection to the information or breakdown call centre.

Buttons and warning lights of “Care Connect”services » Fig. 12

A Warning light for system status.

B Press this button to establish a call to the **information number** in the event of problems with the online services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

C Press this button to establish a call to the **breakdown number** in the event of a breakdown.

The **system status** is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp A » Fig. 12.

- Green - the system is functional.
- Red - there is a fault in the system.

Note

The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this interim period of validity, content changes of these services are possible. Current information can be found on the “ŠKODA Connect” website» page 12.

Remote access to the vehicle

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

Fig. 13 **ŠKODA Connect application**

With the **remote access to the vehicle** service, you can access some vehicle functions via the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website or the “ŠKODA Connect” application installed on your mobile device.

After entering the following address into the web browser, the website is opened with information on the ŠKODA mobile applications.

http://go.skoda.eu/service-app

Installing the “ŠKODA Connect” mobile application

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 13 .

Remote access to the vehicle includes, for example, the following services.

- Driving data.
- Vehicle condition.
- Last parking position.
- Vehicle unlocking and vehicle locking.

Note

The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this interim period of validity, content changes of these services are possible. Current information can be found on the “ŠKODA Connect” website» page 12.

“Infotainment Online” services

Main menu and overview of services

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.



Fig. 14
Main menu

These services extend the functionality of the Internet-connected Infotainment.

To **display** the main menu » Fig. 14, press the button MENU, the tap the function surface .

- News from the RSS channels set in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website
- Online search for filling stations with information on fuel prices » page 148
- P Online search for car parks with information on free parking spaces » page 148
- Weather forecast near the vehicle position, the destination of the route or in the vicinity of the selected location
- Online destination search » page 146
- Import of the destinations created in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website » page 152
- Import of the routes created in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website » page 158
- Online import of POI Categories » page 144
- Conditions for the use of Online Services
- Settings of Online Services » page 107

For more information on the available services, see the “ŠKODA Connect” website» page 12.

Note

The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this interim period of validity, content changes of these services are possible. Current information can be found on the “ŠKODA Connect” website» page 12.

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

In this section of the instructions you will find important information on the subject of passive safety. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

Other important safety information can also be found in the subsequent sections of this Owner's Manual. Therefore, the Owner's Manual should always be kept in the vehicle.

Before every journey

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Check the lights and turn signal lights are functioning correctly.
- Check the wiper function and the wiper blades for wear. Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed. Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant levels.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident.
- Close all doors and the engine compartment and luggage compartment lid.
- Ensure that no parts and components are visibly loose in the vehicle.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children using a suitable child seat » page 28, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position » page 18, *Correct and safe seating position*.

Driving safety

For safety in traffic, the following precautions must be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol, drugs or similar).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

Correct and safe seating position

Introduction

Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front edge of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to one side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.

WARNING

- The adjustable seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 28, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.

Driver's correct seated position

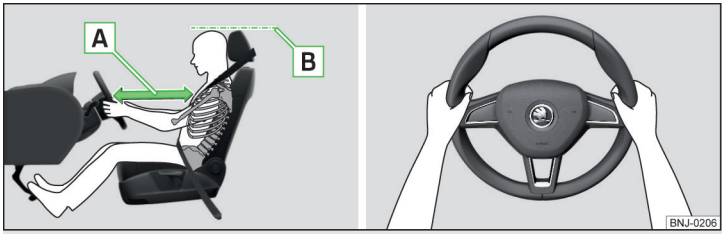


Fig. 15 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following settings.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.

✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.

✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 15 - A.

✓ Adjust the headrest so that the top edge of the headrest is, where possible, at the same level as the upper part of your head (not for seats with integrated headrests) » Fig. 15 - B.

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 21, *Wearing seat belts*.

WARNING

- A distance of least 25 cm to the steering wheel should be maintained, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you - There is a risk to life!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 15. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). Otherwise, you could sustain serious injury to the arms, hands and head if the airbag is activated.
- Ensure there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get behind the pedals while driving. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

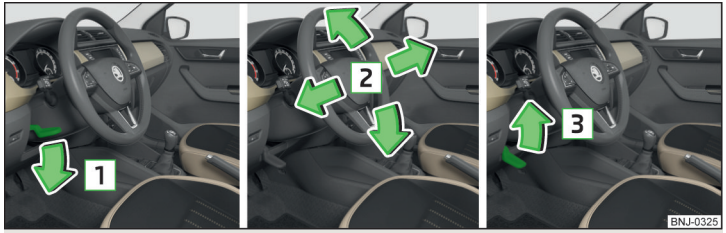


Fig. 16 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Turn the safety lever beneath the steering wheel towards the arrow 1 » Fig. 16.

› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.

› Pull the holder until it stops in arrow direction 3.

WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving, but only when the vehicle is stationary!
- The safety lever must always be locked so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – There is a risk of accident!

Passenger's correct seating position

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head » Fig. 15 *on page 19* - B (not for seats with integrated headrest).

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 21, *Wearing seat belts*.

WARNING

- A distance of least 25 cm to the dash panel should be maintained, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you - There is a risk to life!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Passengers' correct seating position on the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

For the safety of the passengers in the rear seats, and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is, where possible, at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 15 *on page 19* - B.

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 21, *Wearing seat belts*.

Seat belts

Wearing seat belts

Introduction

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

The seat belts reduce kinetic energy to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

When transporting a child the following instructions must be observed » page 28, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Fasten seat belts before every journey! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 18, *Correct and safe seating position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear, otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.

WARNING (Continued)

- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not attach clamps or similar objects to the belt - the function of the belt retractor could be restricted.
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 70.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 207.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If damage to the parts of the seat belt system (e.g. the strap, the belt connectors, the retractor, the lock or similar) are detected, the seat belt in question must be replaced by a specialist immediately.
- Seat belts which have been subject to stress in an accident should be replaced by a specialist garage. Also check the seat belt anchors.

Correct routing of seat belt

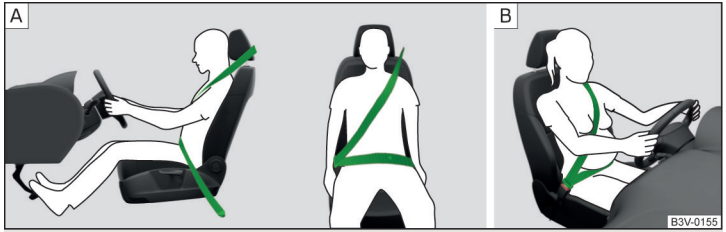


Fig. 17 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

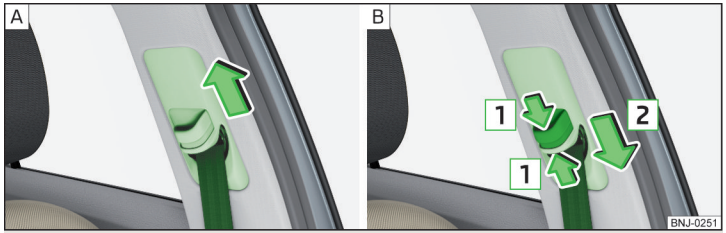


Fig. 18 **Seat belt height adjusters for front seats**

Read and observe ! on page 21 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The **shoulder belt** should be positioned approximately over the middle of your shoulder (under no circumstances across your neck) and lie flush to the chest» Fig. 17 - A.

The **lower part of the belt** should run across the pelvis (it should not lie on top of the stomach) and must always fit snugly» Fig. 17 - A.

For **pregnant women**, the lower part of the belt must be positioned as low down as possible across the pelvis, to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen» Fig. 17 - B.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats

› Push the seat belt guide loop **upwards** in the direction of arrow» Fig. 18 - A.
› **or**: push together the mechanism in the direction of arrows 1 and push the return pulley **downwards** in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 18 - B.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is blocked reliably » page 23, *Inertia reels*.

! WARNING

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even, in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries, as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then abruptly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. pencils, spectacles, pens, keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

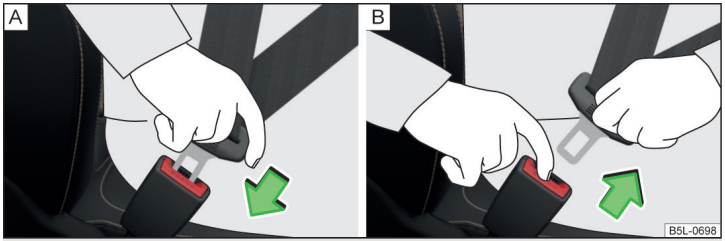


Fig. 19 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 21 first.

Before fastening the belt

› Adjust the head restraint properly (does not apply to seats with integrated head restraints).
› Adjust the seat (applies to the front seats).
› Adjust the belt height (applies to the front seats).

Fastening

› Slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle » Fig. 19 – A that is part of the seat until it clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release

› Grip the lock tongue and press the red button in the buckle » Fig. 19 - B, the lock tongue pops out.

› Guide the belt back by hand so that the seat belt does not twist and the webbing rolls up fully.

WARNING

The reel opening for the lock tongue must not be blocked otherwise the lock tongue will not lock into place properly.

Inertia reel and belt pre-tensioners

Inertia reels

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

The seat belt can move freely when it is pulled slowly. The seat belt is locked by the inertia reel when it is pulled suddenly. The belts also lock under full braking, under acceleration, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision of a certain severity, the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including the removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The airbag will only provide optimum protection in conjunction with wearing the seat belt, the airbag is not a substitute for the seat belts.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster » page 40.

System description

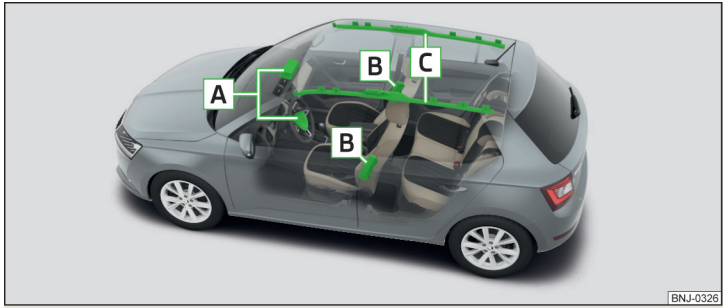


Fig. 20 **Airbag installation points**

Installation locations of airbags » Fig. 20

A Front airbags
B Side airbags
C Head airbags

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the remaining body parts is thus reduced.

- **Front airbags** - head and upper body. The airbags can be identified by the lettering AIRBAG featured on the steering wheel and on the dash panel on the passenger side.
- **Side airbags** - for the entire upper body (chest, stomach, pelvis) on the side next to the door. The air bags can be identified by a label with the lettering AIRBAG marked on the front seat backrests.
- **Head airbags** - head and neck. The airbags are provided with the lettering AIRBAG marked on the B-pillar cladding.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Individual airbags.
- Warning light in the instrument cluster » page 40.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 27.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 27.

Airbag deployment



Fig. 21 **Inflated airbags**

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

When triggered, the airbag fills with gas and unfolds. The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

When the airbag inflates, smoke is released. This is not a sign of a fire in the vehicle.

Triggering conditions
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. The important factors here are the hardness of the object with which the vehicle collides, the angle of impact, vehicle speed etc.

Deceleration during impact plays an important role in the deployment of the airbags. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag.
- Head airbag.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
- The ignition is switched on.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.
- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - position).

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Safety instructions

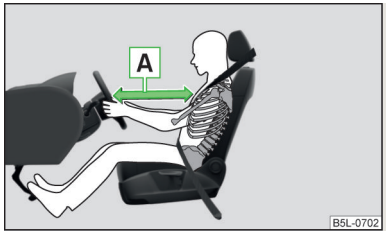


Fig. 22
Safe distance from the steering wheel and dash panel

WARNING

General information
- **The seat belts and the airbag system can only offer proper protection if the driver and passengers are seated properly** » page 18.
- The airbag unleashes enormous force when triggered, which can lead to serious injuries or fatalities if the driver and passengers are not seated properly. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 30.
- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must then be replaced.
- The surface of the steering wheel and the dash panel should only be cleaned with a dry or slightly dampened cloth in the area of the front airbags.

WARNING

Information about the front airbags
- It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a minimum distance of 25 cm from the steering wheel or the control panel » Fig. 22 - A, If you do not observe this distance, the airbag cannot protect you - risk to life! The front seats and the head restraints must always be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.

WARNING (Continued)

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if you are using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » page 26, *Airbag deactivation*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.
- No other persons, animals or objects should be placed in front of the occupants in the front seats in the deployment area of the front airbags.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the dash panel on the passenger side must not be plastered, covered or modified in any way. No parts (e.g. cup holders, mobile phone mounts etc.) may be mounted near the airbag installation points and in the airbag deployment area.
- Never place objects on the surface of the dash panel on the passenger side.

WARNING

Information on side and head airbags

- No objects (e.g. sun visors turned towards the windows) should be located in the deployment area of the side and head airbags. No accessories (e.g. cup holders etc.) should be fitted to the doors - risk of injury!
- Hang only light clothing on the hooks in the vehicle, do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets. Do not use hangers to hang up clothes.
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 203.
- No excessive force, e.g. through blows, kicks etc. should be applied to the seat backrests - there is a risk of damage to the side airbags. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of a type expressly authorised by ŠKODA AUTO. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers or stitching at the installation points for the side airbags should be immediately repaired by a specialist company.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Any work on the airbag system, including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel), must only be carried out by a specialist garage. Further information » page 203.
- No changes of any sort should be made to parts of the airbag system, the front bumper or the bodywork.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

Airbag deactivation

Deactivating airbags

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 23 *on page 27* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA Service Partner to switch off any other airbags.

A warning light indicates that the airbag has been deactivated » page 40.

Deactivating an airbag should, for example, be considered only in the following cases.

- A child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat, in which the child is transported with its back to the direction of travel » page 28.
- Despite correct adjustment of the driver's seat, the distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest cannot be maintained.
- Additional controls for drivers with a physical disability are installed in the vehicle.
- Special seats (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags) are installed in the vehicle.

WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated at the time of the vehicle being sold, the purchaser must be informed!

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

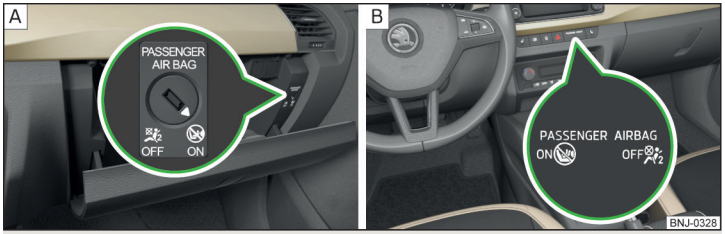


Fig. 23 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation**

Positions of the key switch » Fig. 23 - A

OFF The front passenger airbag is deactivated - after the ignition is switched on, the indicator light OFF » Fig. 23 illuminates B

ON The front passenger airbag is activated - after the ignition is switched on, the indicator light illuminates for 65 seconds ON

Switch off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› On the radio key, fold the key bit out **fully** ».
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light OFF lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› On the radio key, fold the key bit out **fully** ».
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light ON lights up after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The key cannot be inserted into the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag! The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning lights ON OFF flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident, children should only be transported in child seats!

Please refer to the instructions in this Owner's Manual and the child seat manufacturer's instructions with regard to the installation and use of the child seat.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport children in the rear seats. Only transport a child in the passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- You should never carry children - including babies! - on your lap.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. Children might not be capable of leaving the vehicle or helping themselves independently in the event of an emergency. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- The child must be secured in the vehicle throughout the journey! Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries and also injure other occupants.
- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat, as they can suffer severe, or even fatal, injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even, in minor accidents.

WARNING (Continued)

- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are positioned properly. Care should also be taken to ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.
- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 72. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 1)

Does not apply to Taiwan



Fig. 24 **Warning labels**

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag positioned in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This warning is also given on stickers that are located in the following places.

- On the passenger sun visor» Fig. 24 - A.
- On the B-column on the front passenger side» Fig. 24 – B.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with his/her back facing the direction of travel » !.
- Set the front passenger seat back as vertically as possible so that there is firm contact between the passenger seat back and the child seat back.
- Where possible, move the front passenger seat back so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat behind.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned **in front of or at the same height** as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side. Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt does not "jam" in the return pulley. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

! WARNING

- **Never** use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, if the airbag is switched on. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal, injuries in the event of it being deployed.
- Once a child seat in which the child is transported with its back to the direction of travel is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be reactivated.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 2)

Applies to Taiwan



Fig. 25
Warning labels

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 25.

Child safety and the side airbag

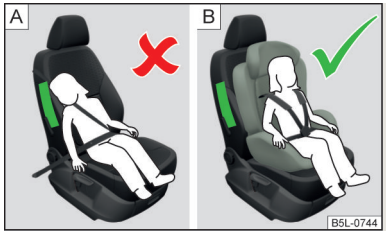


Fig. 26
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 26 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 26 – B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9 - 18 kg
2	15 - 25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Overview of the use of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats Outside	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9 - 18 kg	U	U	U
2 15 - 25 kg	U	U	U[a)]
3 22 - 18 kg	U	U	U[a)]

a) If the middle rear seat is not provided with a headrest, then a child seat of Group 2 or 3 is only to be used if this has its own built-in headrest. If the child seat of Group 2 or 3 does not have its own built-in headrest, the child seat must be attached to the outer rear seat.

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system

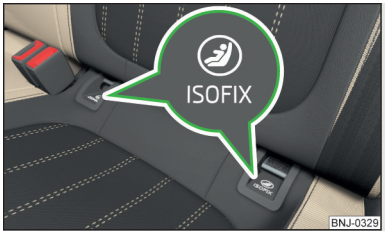


Fig. 27
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the child in place using the ISOFIX-system » Fig. 27.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX-system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX-system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX-system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIX system

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX-system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9 - 18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
2 15 - 25 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
3 22 - 18 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

IL-SU The seat is suitable for the use of approved child seats in ISOFIX in the “Semi-Universal”category. The “Semi-Universal” category means that the child seat is approved for use with the ISOFIX-system. Note the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the ISOFIX installation of a child seat with “Universal” approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER system attachment belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

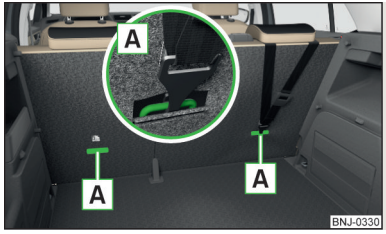


Fig. 28
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The locking eyes A for attaching the belt of a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the rear seat backrests » Fig. 28.

Some country-specific models can also be equipped with a hitch point on the back of the middle rear seat backrest.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER-system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats equipped with attachment points with the logo TOP TETHER.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

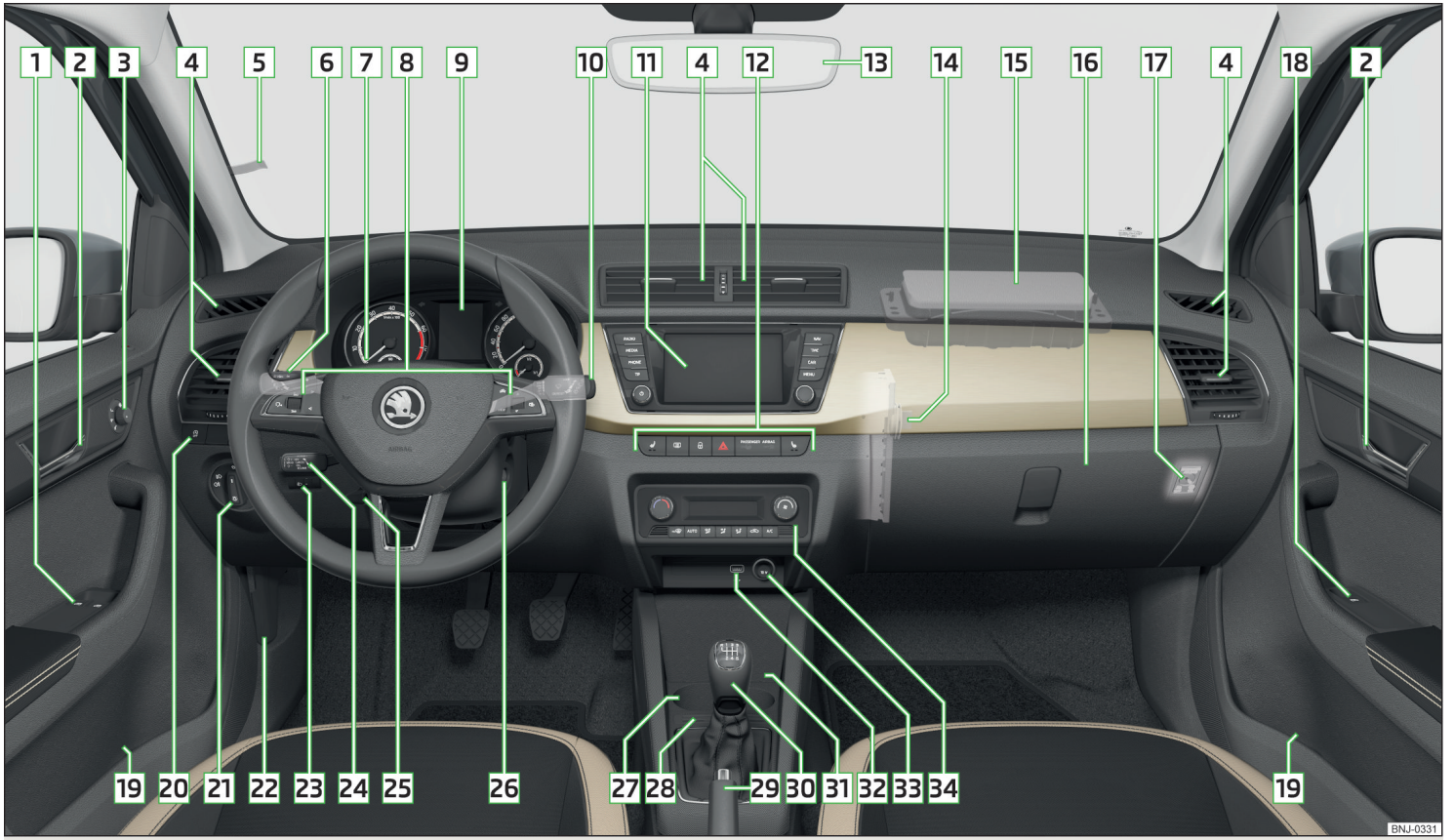


Fig. 29 **Cockpit example for LHD models**

Operation

cockpit

Overview

1 Electric power windows — 58
2 Door opening lever — 55
3 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 69
4 Air outlet vents — 93
5 Ticket holder — 74
6 Operating lever (depending on equipment):
- Indicator light and high-beam headlight — 61
- Speed regulating system — 182
- Speed limiter — 184
- Headlight assist — 62

7 Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front airbag — 24
8 Buttons for operating the information system — 45
9 Instrument cluster — 36
10 Operating lever:
- Windscreen wipers and washers — 66
- Information system — 45

11 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Storage compartment — 75
- Infotainment — 95

12 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- Left seat heating — 72
- Rear window heating — 66
- Central locking system — 54
- Hazard lights — 64
- Warning light for the front seat passenger airbag — 27
- Right seat heating — 72

13 Interior rear-view mirror — 68
14 SD card slot in the storage compartment on the passenger side (depending on equipment fitted) — 97
15 Front passenger airbag — 24
16 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 77
17 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 27
18 Power window in the front passenger door — 58
19 Storage compartment — 74
20 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- START STOP — 164
- Traction control (TCS) — 174
- Parking aid — 175
- Tyre Press. Loss Indicator — 193

21 Light switch — 60
22 Bonnet release lever — 210
23 Regulator for headlamp beam adjustment for the headlights — 60
24 Operating lever for adaptive cruise control — 187
25 Steering wheel locking lever — 19
26 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Ignition lock — 163
- Starter button — 163

27 Cup holder — 75
28 Coin and card holders — 75
29 Handbrake lever — 166
30 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 167
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 168

31 Storage compartment — 74
32 USB input — 74
33 Depending on equipment fitted:
- 12-Volt power socket — 79
- Cigarette lighter — 80

34 Controls for heating/air conditioning — 91

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in this layout » Fig. 29.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

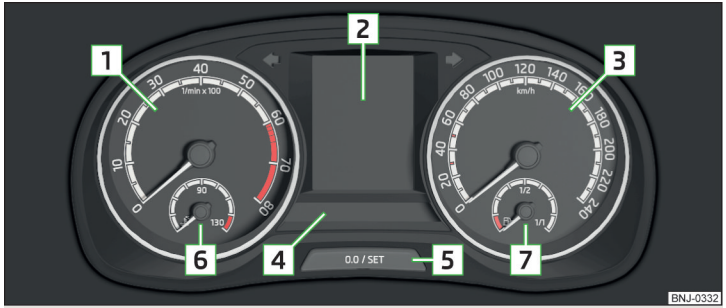


Fig. 30 **Instrument cluster - Version 1**

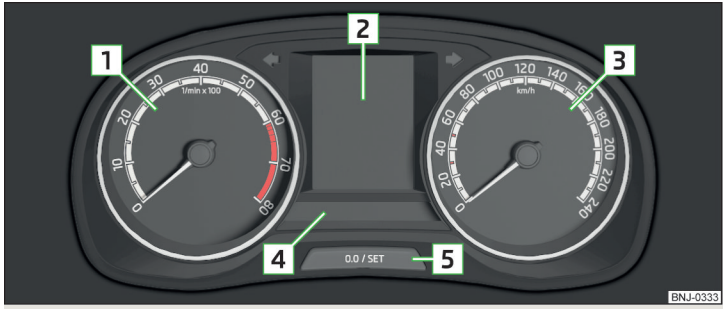


Fig. 31 **Instrument cluster - Version 2**

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 36
- with warning lights » page 37

2 Display » page 45

3 Speedometer
- with warning lights » page 37

4 Bar with warning lights » page 37

5 Operation key:
- Set the time » page 46
- Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 45
- Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 51

6 Coolant temperature gauge » page 37

7 Fuel gauge » page 37

The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout. If the visibility is poor and the lights are not on, the brightness of the instrument lighting reduces to alert the driver to switch on the lights in due time.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can be adjusted in the Infotainment menu CAR → → → → **Light**.

Rev counter

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 30 *on page 36* or » Fig. 31 *on page 36* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 46.

CAUTION

The rev counter pointer may only move into the red area for a short time - otherwise risk of engine damage!

Coolant temperature gauge

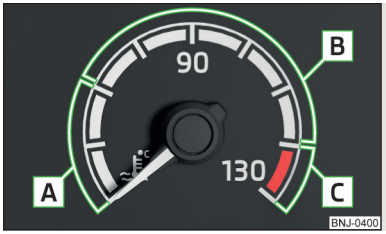


Fig. 32
Coolant temperature gauge

Applies to cars with the instrument cluster variant 1 » Fig. 30 *on page 36*.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

A **Cold area**, The engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds and high engine loads.

B **The operating range**

C **High temperature range**, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 43.

Fuel gauge

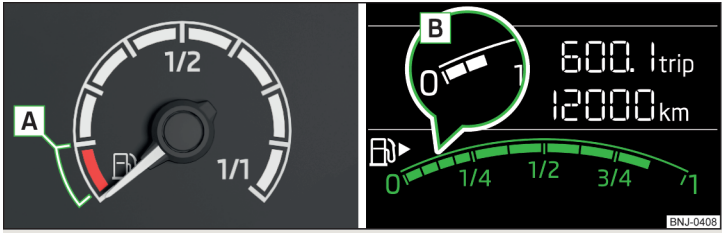


Fig. 33 **Fuel gauge: In the instrument cluster / the display of the instrument cluster**

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 45 litres.

If the fuel level reaches the reserve level A or B, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 41.

WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely - risk of accident!

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The arrow ▶ next to the symbol within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Warning lights

Introduction

	Handbrake	» page 38
	Brake system	» page 38
	Front seat belt warning light	» page 38
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	» page 39
	Power steering Steering lock (engine start push-button)	» page 39
	Stabilisation control (ESC) Traction control (TCS)	» page 39
	Traction control (ASR) deactivated	» page 40
	Antilock brake system (ABS)	» page 40
	Rear fog light	» page 40
	Exhaust control system	» page 40
EPC	Engine performance check	» page 40
	Airbag system	» page 40
	Tyre pressure	» page 41
	Fuel reserve	» page 41
	Turning signal system	» page 41

	Trailer turn signal lights	» page 41
	Fog lights	» page 42
	Speed regulating system Speed limiter	» page 42
	Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)	» page 42
	High beam	» page 42
	Automatic gearbox	» page 42
	Rear seat belt warning light	» page 42
	Alternator	» page 43
	Coolant	» page 43
	Engine oil pressure	» page 43
	Engine oil level	» page 43
	Bulb failure	» page 44
	Particle filter	» page 44
	Windscreen washer fluid level	» page 44
	START-STOP system	» page 44
	Display of a low temperature	» page 44
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	» page 45
	Distance warning (Front Assist)	» page 45
	Advance warning/emergency braking (Front Assist)	» page 45
SOS	Emergency call	» page 45
	Service	» page 45

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

Warning lights in the display
Depending on the significance, the warning light ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) will light up along with some other warning lights in the display.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated indicator lights and related messages or instructions in the instrument cluster display may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights system » page 64. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 209.

handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

(P) illuminates - the hand brake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

▶ Release the handbrake.

Braking system

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

(!) lights up – the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

▶ Park the vehicle, STOP **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - There is a risk of an accident!

Front seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of over 30 km/h the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at the same time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 minutes, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light illuminates permanently.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates – the ACC delay is not sufficient.

▶ Apply the brake.

For more information about the ACC system » page 185.

Power steering/steering lock (engine start with button press)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Fault in the power steering

lights up – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist is no longer working (significantly higher steering forces).

illuminates - this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces may be greater.

▶ Switch off the ignition, start the engine again and travel a short distance.
▶ If the warning light does not go off, stop the vehicle, **stop driving**. Seek help from a specialist garage.
▶ If the warning light does not go off, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock defective (engine start push-button)

flashes

Message:	**Steering lock faulty. Stop!** **STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY**

▶ Park the vehicle, and **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes

Message:	**Steering lock: workshop!** **STEERING WORKSHOP**

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock not unlocked (engine start push-button)

flashes

Message:	**Please move the steering wheel.** **MOVE STEERING WHEEL**

▶ Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.
▶ If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Stability Control (ESC)/Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

flashes – the ESC or TCS is currently being activated.

illuminates – there is an ESC or TCS fault.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
▶ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

More information about the ESC system » page 173 or TCS system » page 174.

Traction control (TCS) deactivated

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – there is an ABS fault.

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- If warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 38, *Braking system* , **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – there is a risk of an accident occurring!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates - the rear fog light is switched on.

Emission control system

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode – there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

EPC engine electronics warning light

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

EPC lights up – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode – there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

System fault
illuminates

Message:	**Error: airbag** **AIRBAG ERROR**

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch
illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool
lights up for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds

Message:	**Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.** **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

WARNING

If a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident! Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Change of tyre pressure values

illuminates - there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

- Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 217.
- Correct the tyre pressure, if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 222 or use the repair kit » page 226.
- Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 194.

System fault

flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes again after the engine has started, there is a system error.

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Other incidents

The following reasons can also apply if the warning light is illuminated.

- The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute the load evenly.
- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are fitted.
- A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 7 litres).

- Fill up with fuel » page 208.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

flashes - the left turn signal is switched on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate (does not apply when towing).

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

flashes - the trailer turn signals are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

▶ Check the trailer bulbs.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates - the fog lights are switched on.

Speed regulating system/speed limiter

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates - the vehicle speed is limited by the speed regulating system and/or the adaptive cruise control or by the speed limiter.

flashes - the speed set with the speed limiter has been exceeded.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – apply the brake.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates - the main beam or headlight flasher is switched on.

Automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Gearbox overheated
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

illuminates

Message:	**Gearbox overheated. You can drive on.** **GEARBOX OVERHEATED**

Transmission overheated. You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution.

illuminates

Message:	**Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!** **STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT**

▶ **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

▶ If the warning light does not go off, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Transmission problem
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

illuminates

Message:	**Gearbox faulty. Stop the vehicle safely!** **GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP**

▶ Park the vehicle, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

illuminates

Message:	**Gearbox in emergency mode. No reverse gear.** **GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL** or **Error: gearbox. Speed is limited.** **GEARBOX ERROR**

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Rear seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates – a rear seat belt is not fastened.

illuminates - a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates - the battery is not being charged while the engine is running.

- As the vehicle battery during your journey, are all non-essential electrical loads (e.g. Infotainment) must be switched off.
- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! CAUTION

If in addition to the light the light lights up while driving, **stop driving** - risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Coolant level too low

⚠ illuminates

Message:	**Please check the coolant level! Log book!** **ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and allow the engine to cool down.
- Check the coolant level » page 213.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light lights up again, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light lights up again, **stop driving!**

- Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

⚠ illuminates

Message:	**Engine overheat. Stop! Observe log book.** **ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and allow the engine to cool down.
- Continue your journey only after the warning light has disappeared.

Engine oil pressure

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

⚠ flashes - the engine oil pressure is too low.

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
- Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.
- Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

If it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Engine oil level too low

⚠ illuminates

Message:	**Please add engine oil.** **ADD OIL**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If the engine oil is not refilled, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

⚠ illuminates

Message:	**Please reduce oil level.** **OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH**

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

⚠ illuminates

Message: **Oil sensor: please visit workshop.**
OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP

▶ Immediately drive to the nearest specialist garage with appropriate caution.

CAUTION

If it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

⚠ illuminates - one of the lamps is faulty.

A message will appear in the display about the affected lamp.

Particulate filter

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

The particulate filter separates and burns the soot particles from the exhaust.

⚠ illuminates - the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, if allowed by the traffic conditions » !, you should drive at a speed between 50-120 km/h in the recommended gear.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the indicator light does not go out within 30 minutes, the filter was not cleaned.

▶ Immediately drive to the nearest specialist garage with appropriate caution.

WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials, such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- As long as the indicator light is lit, the START-STOPfunction is not available.

Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This supports the correct function of the particulate filter.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

⚠ illuminates - the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

▶ Top up the windscreen washer fluid» page 211.

START-STOPsystem

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

The warning lights Ⓐ indicate the status of the START-STOP system» page 164.

Display of a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

❄ illuminates - the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

The warning lights indicate the condition of the ACC system» page 185.

Front Assist

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

illuminates – the safe distance to the vehicle in front is below the minimum.

Information on the Front Assist system » page 190.

Advance warning / Emergency braking (Front Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – the system has recognized the risk of a collision or automatically triggered an emergency braking manoeuvre » page 190.

emergency call

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

SOS ⚠ lights up – there is a fault in the emergency call system.

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Service

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates – note regarding a due service appointment » page 51, *Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval.*

Information system

Driver information system

Display in the instrument cluster

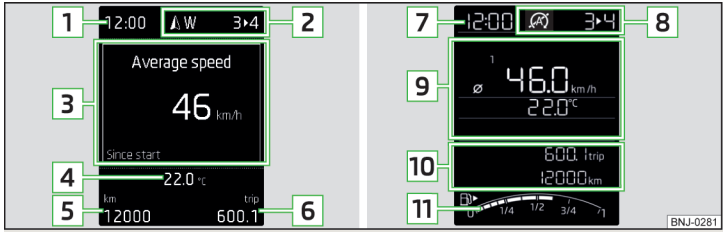


Fig. 34 **Display types: MAXI DOT display / Segment display**

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system uses the display in the instrument cluster to provide the following information » Fig. 34.

1. Time / symbols of the Infotainment voice control
2. Engaged gear / gear recommendation
   Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
   Warning lights of the START-STOP system
   Compass display
3. Driving data (multifunction display)
   Warning lights
   Information messages
   Door alarm
4. Outside temperature
5. Cruise control / speed limiter
   Total distance travelled
6. Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
7. Time
8. Warning lights of the START-STOP system
   Engaged gear / gear recommendation
   Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox

9 Outside temperature
Warning lights
Driving data (multifunction display)

10 Total distance travelled
Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
Cruise control / speed limiter
Service interval display
Information messages

11 Fuel gauge

Door, luggage compartment and bonnet alarm
When the door or luggage compartment / bonnet is open, a graphic warning appears in the display.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Press button A » Fig. 35 *on page 46*.

Setting the time

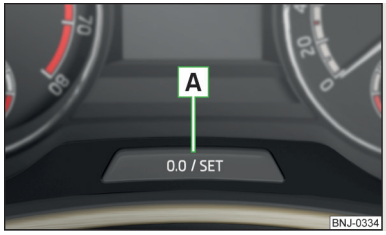


Fig. 35
Button in the instrument cluster

Set the time using the button in the instrument cluster
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 35 until the **time** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A and the system switches to the hour setting function.
› Press the button A again and set the hours.
› Wait 4 seconds, the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button A again and set the minutes.
› Wait 4 seconds, the system switches to the initial setting.

Gear recommendation

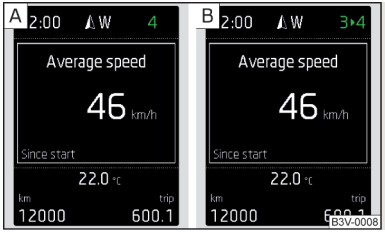


Fig. 36
Information on the selected gear / gear recommendation

A suitable engaged gear or, where appropriate, a recommended gear is displayed, with the aim of conserving the life of the engine and increasing driving efficiency.

Display » Fig. 36
A Optimal gear engaged
B Gear recommendation (e.g. 3 ▶ 4 means that it is advantageous to switch from 3. to 4. gear)

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

WARNING
The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations (e.g. when overtaking).

Vehicle status

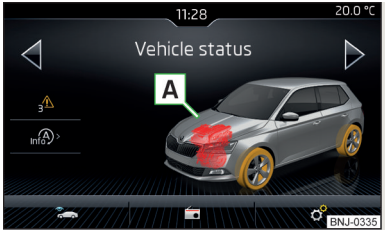


Fig. 37
Vehicle status

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After the message is displayed for the first time, the warning lights ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

The vehicle status can be displayed in the Infotainment in menu CAR → → → **Vehicle status**.

In the screen, information regarding vehicle condition or function of the tyre pressure monitor is displayed.

› Using the function surfaces ◁ ▷, select the *Vehicle status* menu item.

Function surfaces and screen display » Fig. 37

A Vehicle representation (the zones of the vehicle are shown in different colours, corresponding to any warning messages that occur. The warning messages are displayed once you touch the “vehicle”)

✓/⚠ No message/warning messages relating to vehicle status and the number (if there is only one message, one warning message text is displayed)

Info Display information about the status of the START-STOP system

ON/OFF Activation/deactivation of messages relating to the START-STOP system messages in another screen display

Operation of the information system

Operation via the operating lever

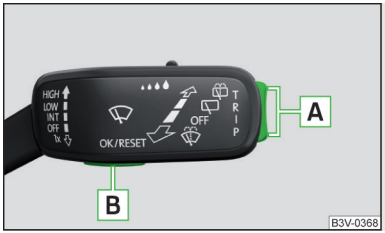


Fig. 38
Buttons on the control lever

Operating the multifunction display

A **Press** (up or down) - Select data / Setting values

B **Press** Show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

A **Press** (up or down) - move to the selected menu
Hold (up or down) - display main menu

B **Press** - confirm selected menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 39 **Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel**

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Switch on/off voice control

A **Turn** - sets the volume
Press - sound on / off

▷ Skip to next track/station

◁ Switch to previous track/station

Display the assistance systems menu

VIEW Show previous menu (if one has been selected) / display *Telephone* menu

Operating the multifunction display

B **Turn** - select data / set values
Press Show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

Hold - display main menu
Press - return to a previous level in the menu

B **Turn** - move in the selected menu
Press - confirm selected menu item

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on.

The units can be set in the Infotainment in the CAR → ⚙ → **Units** menu.

Information Overview

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

Range - Drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

Average fuel consumption - Is calculated continuously since the last time that the memory was erased. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

Current fuel consumption - When the vehicle is stationary or moving slowly, the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (in models in some countries the following appears --,- km/l).

Oil temperature if the temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, the --- symbols are displayed.

Warning at when the preset speed is exceededallows the setting of a speed limit where, if exceeded, an acoustic warning signal and a warning message appears on the display of the instrument cluster.

Current Speed - Digital speedometer.

Average speed - Value constantly recalculated, for distance since last clearing the memory. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Distance driven - Distance driven since the memory was last cleared.

Driving time - Driving time since last clearing the memory.

Coolant temperature - If the coolant temperature is in the range 70-120 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached. If the temperature is below 70 ° C, high engine speeds and straining the engine should be avoided. If the temperature is over 120°C, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster » page 43.

Infotainment display

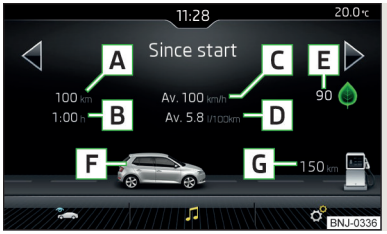


Fig. 40
Driving data

› In the Infotainment, in menu CAR, tap in the function surface → Tap **Journey data**.

Screen display » Fig. 40

A Distance travelled
B Driving time
C Average speed
D Average fuel consumption
E Transit point rating (**DriveGreen** Function)
F Graphic fuel level display (if the estimated range is less than 300 km, the vehicle starts to approach the symbol)
G Approximate range

Use the function surfaces ◁ ▷ to select one of the following presets.
▸ *Since start* - Driving data for the individual trip
▸ *Long-term* - Long-term driving data
▸ *Since refuel* - Data since refuelling

Warning at when exceeding the set speed

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit is 5 km/h steps.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Reset speed limit

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› By confirming the speed stored in the memory, the speed limit is reset.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

Memory

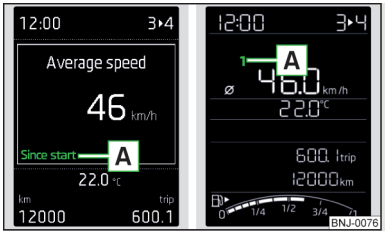


Fig. 41
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (M) / Segment display (S)

The system saves the data in the three memories described below which are displayed at the position A » Fig. 41.

Since start (M) or "1" (S)

Driving data is stored from when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off. If the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition, new data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (M) and "2" (S)

The memory gathers driving data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9 999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

Since refuel (M) or "3" (S)

The driving data is stored in the memory since the last fuel refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

› To **choose the memory bank**, confirm the selected indication again and select the desired memory.
› To **delete the memory bank** of the chosen selection, hold down the button confirming the selection.

The following driving data is stored in different memory banks.

▸ Average fuel consumption
▸ Distance travelled
▸ Average speed
▸ Driving time

Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

The MAXI DOT display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, provides information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

The menus with details can be operated and displayed using the buttons on the operating lever or the multifunction steering wheel » page 47.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **Driving data** » page 48
- **Assist systems** » page 50
- **Navigation** » page 50
- **Audio** » page 50
- **Telephone** » page 50;
- **Vehicle** » page 46

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- The display language can be set in the Infotainment » page 105, *Infotainment language settings* or » page 111, *Infotainment language settings*.
- For vehicles without Infotainment, the display language can only be adjusted by a specialist garage.

Menu itemNavigation

The following information is displayed in the **Navigation** menu item.

- Driving recommendations
- Compass
- Last destinations

Menu itemAudio

E.g. the following information is displayed in the **Audio** menu item.

Radio
- Station currently being played (name/frequency).
- The selected frequency range (e.g. FM) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. FM 3), if the station is stored in the memory list.
- List of available stations (if more than 5 stations can be received).
- TP traffic announcements.

Media
- Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

MenuTelephone

The call list with the following symbols is displayed in the **Telephone** menu item.

Incoming call
Outgoing call
Missed call

Symbols in the display

Telephone battery charge (this function is only supported by some mobile phones)
Signal strength (this function is only supported by some mobile phones)
A telephone connected to the Infotainment system
Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)
Switch-off microphone

Apple CarPlay

An external device connected to the Infotainment system via Apple CarPlay can be operated via the multifunction steering wheel as well as via menus in the instrument cluster display.

The following symbols are displayed in the **Telephone** menu option.

Answer the incoming call
Reject incoming call / end call

Menu item Assist systems

The following systems are activated/deactivated in the **Assist systems** menu item.

- Front Assist
- Assist system for blind spot monitoring
- Rear Traffic Alert

Service intervals

Introduction

Compliance with the service intervals is of crucial importance for the service life and value retention of the vehicle. Never exceed the service date.

The specialist garage will inform you about the type of service interval, the option to change it, and the service scope.

The service interval display in the display of the instrument cluster will notify you when a service is due.

Proof of service
A specialist garage will confirm the corresponding service record in the service information system called Digital Service Plan.

We recommend that you always print out the respective service record.

Note
The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO warranty terms or other binding agreements.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

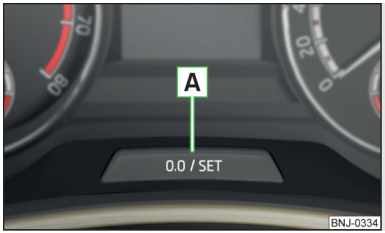


Fig. 42
Button in the instrument cluster

Information in relation to the remaining kilometres and days until the next service appointment can be displayed in Infotainment in menu CAR → → **Service** or with the button in the instrument cluster.

Use the key to display
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 42 until the **Service** menu item is shown in the display.
› Release the button A.

In the display, the symbol appears for 4 seconds along with the following message for the kilometres or days to the next service appointment.

Service messages

Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after the ignition is switched on.

Once the service interval **is reached**, the symbol appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, together with the message.

Resetting the service interval display

Have the display reset by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display can cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

The vehicle is equipped with a central locking system which makes it possible to unlock / lock **all** the doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid simultaneously.

The door unlocking can be adjusted individually » page 54.

The **unlocking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing twice.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically.

The **locking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing once.

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle doors have been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) could lock the vehicle, turn on the ignition or start the engine - danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. At very high or very low temperatures can be fatal!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the key grooves clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.

Unlocking/locking with the key via the lock cylinder

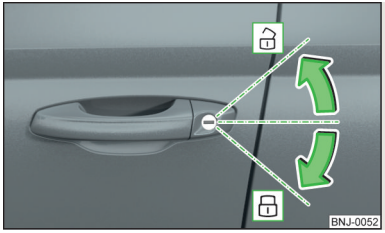


Fig. 43
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 43

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

CAUTION

If the locking cylinder is provided with a cap, the cap must be removed before unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » page 231.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

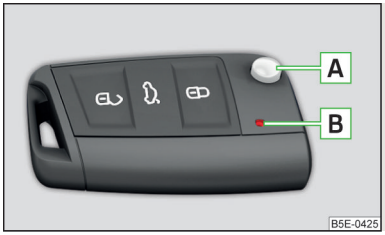


Fig. 44
Key with pop-out key bit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

Description of the key » Fig. 44

- Unlock button
- Lock button
- Safety button to unlock the boot lid

A Button for popping out/pushing in the key bit
B Battery status warning light - if the warning light does not flash when you press a button on the key, the battery is discharged

Unlocking / locking the boot lid
By **pressing lightly** on the button the lid is unlocked.

By **pressing down** on the button the lid is unlocked and unlatched (part-opened).

If the lid is unlocked or released with the button, then the lid is automatically locked after closing. The period of time after which the flap is locked can be set » page 58.

CAUTION
- The remote control may be affected by signal superimposition by transmitters close to the car.
- The range of the remote control key is about 30 m. The battery must be replaced if the central locking only reacts to the remote control at a distance of less than approximately 3 m away » page 231.

Locking/unlocking - KESSY

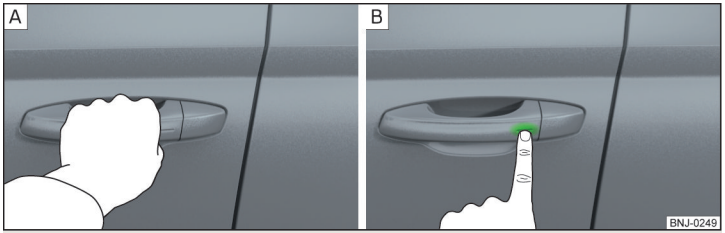


Fig. 45 **Vehicle unlocking / vehicle locking**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

› Grip the door handle to **unlock** the vehicle » Fig. 45 - A.
› Touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger to **lock** » Fig. 45 - B the vehicle.

When unlocking/locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Information on locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

After locking the car, it is not possible to unlock it within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is automatically unlatched (partially opened). After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. The boot lid **remains unlatched** (partially opened); the other doors remain locked.

CAUTION
Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device via the sensors in the door handle.

Deactivating KESSY

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

› Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Within 5 s, touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger » Fig. 45 *on page 53* - B. Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.
› **To check the deactivation**, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle. The door must remain locked.

The KESSY system is activated again automatically after the vehicle is unlocked.

Vehicle locking / unlocking with the central locking button

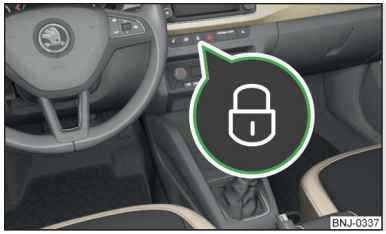


Fig. 46
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

Conditions for the locking/unlocking using the central locking button.

✓ The vehicle is not locked from the outside.

✓ All doors are closed.

› To **lock/unlock**, press the Press » Fig. 46

Locking is indicated by illumination of the symbol in the button.

The following applies after locking.

- Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

WARNING

Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!

SafeLock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

SafeLock prevents the doors from behind opened from inside as well as window operation. This makes an attempted break-in to the vehicle more difficult.

Activating

SafeLock is activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off.

Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!

CHECK SAFELOCK

Activation display

When SafeLock is activated the warning light in the driver's door flashes for 2 seconds in rapid succession, then starts to flash at longer intervals.

Deactivating

- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- **or:** by deactivating the interior monitor and the towing protection » page 57.

The warning light in the driver door flashes rapidly for about 2 seconds, then goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the SafeLock system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever.

The SafeLock switches on the next time the vehicle is locked.

WARNING

If the car is locked and the SafeLock system activated, no-one may remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

The following functions of central locking can be individually adjusted in the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Opening and closing**.

All doors

The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
The function allows you to only unlock the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY allows the unlocking of a single door which is in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Doors on a vehicle side
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY allows the unlocking of both doors which are in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Automatic locking/unlocking
This function enables the locking of all doors and the boot lid from a speed of 15 km / h. Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.

The renewed unlocking of the doors and the boot lid is carried out when the ignition key is removed or when the door is opened from inside (depending on the individual setting for the central locking system).

Opening/closing the door

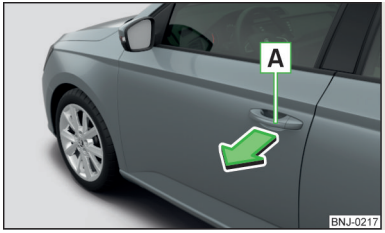


Fig. 47
Door handle

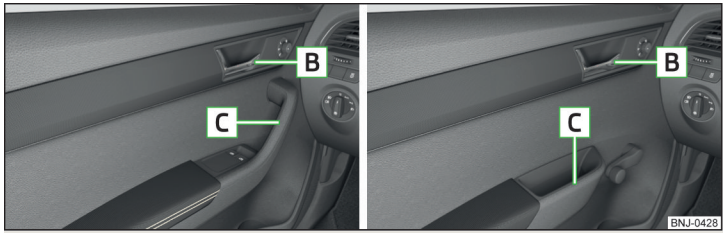


Fig. 48 **Door opening lever - Variant 1 / Variant 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

› To **open from the outside**, unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 47.
› To **open from the inside** pull the door opening lever B » Fig. 48 and push the door away from you.
› To the **lock from the inside** grab handle C and close the door.

! WARNING
- The door must be closed properly, otherwise it could open whilst the vehicle is in motion - risk of fatality!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - danger to life!
- An opened door can close spontaneously if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on a slope – risk of injury.

Child safety lock



Fig. 49 **Rear door: Switching the child safety system on/off**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching on and off

› To **turn on** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position » Fig. 49.
› To **turn off** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

Synchronising the remote control

If the buttons on the remote control key have been depressed several times beyond the effective range of the equipment or the battery has been replaced in the remote control key and the vehicle cannot be unlocked with the remote control, the key must be synchronised.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Fault with the central locking

If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then illuminates for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

In the event of a failure in the central locking system, the vehicle doors and the boot lid can emergency locked or unlocked » page 231.

Failure of the KESSY system

If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the appropriate error message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Low voltage of the key battery

If the voltage of the key battery is too low, a message appears in the display of the instrument cluster referring to the need to replace the battery. Replace the battery » page 231.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

! CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, check that all doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the alarm system is fully operational.

i Note

The alarm system has its own power source, service life of which is 5 years. In order to ensure functionality of the alarm system, we recommend that you get the alarm checked after this time by a specialist garage.

Alarm trigger

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

The alarm is triggered when one of the following unauthorised actions is activated on the vehicle with an activated warning system.

▸ Opening the bonnet.
▸ Opening the boot lid.
▸ Opening the doors.
▸ Manipulation of the ignition lock.
▸ Towing the vehicle.

▶ Movement in the vehicle.
▶ Sudden and significant voltage failure of the electrical system.
▶ Uncoupling the trailer.

An alarm is triggered also when the driver's door is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder.

The alarm is switched off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

As soon as the **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle, it triggers the alarm.

As soon as the **anti-towing protection** detects tilts in the locked vehicle, it triggers the alarm.

These functions should be deactivated if there is a possibility that the alarm will be triggered by movements (e.g. by people or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Disable both functions once

▶ In infotainment in the menu, CAR → → **Open and close**.
▶ By locking twice within 2 seconds.

Safelock is switched off during deactivation» page 54.

! CAUTION

The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Boot lid

Introduction

! WARNING

- Never drive with the tailgate fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning.
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – There is a risk of an accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack – risk of injury!

Opening / closing the boot lid

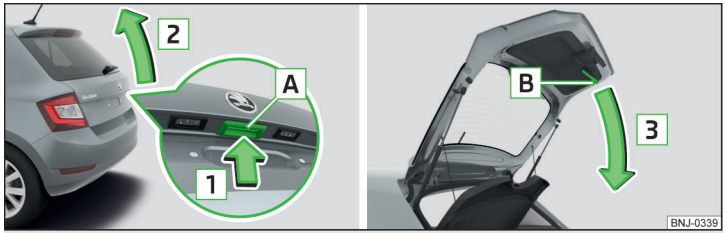


Fig. 50 **Opening / closing the boot lid**

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

› To **open** the boot lid, press button **A** in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 50.
› Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow **2** .
› To **close**, grab the mount **B** and pull in the direction of arrow **3**.

i Note

Button **A** » Fig. 50 is disabled when starting off or driving at a speed of over 5 km/h. The button is reactivated when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the button on the key, then the boot lid is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically.

Window operation

Introduction

WARNING

- Always close the window carefully and in a controlled manner. Otherwise, you may cause considerable crushing injuries to yourself or fellow passengers.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 59. If there is an obstacle (e.g. If a body part gets trapped), the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean (free of ice and similar) to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the electric windows before disconnecting the battery.

Note

If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical windows

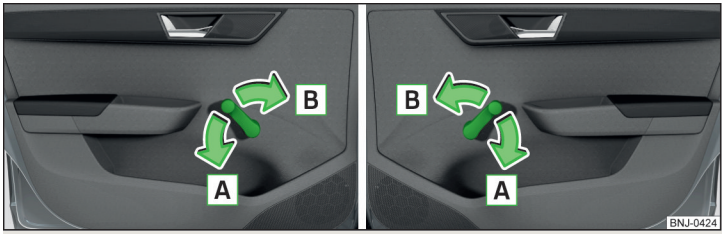


Fig. 51 **Window Operation: Left/right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

› To **open**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 51.
› To **close**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow B.

Electric power windows

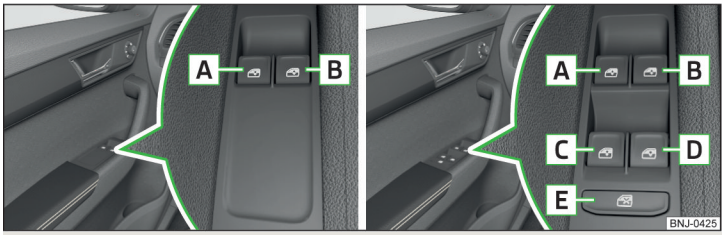


Fig. 52 **Buttons for window-openers: Version 1 / version 2**



Fig. 53
Button of the window lifter on the passenger side

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the front windows - **Variant 1** or the front and rear windows - **Variant 2** can be operated by pushing/pulling the door buttons in the driver's door » Fig. 52.

The window in the front passenger door and the windows in the rear doors (variant 2) are operated via the button in each door.

Power window buttons » Fig. 52

A Front door left
B Front door right
C Rear door, left
D Rear door, right
E Deactivate/activate the buttons in the rear doors (the deactivation may be advantageous if, for example, children are transported on the rear seats)

Opening/closing windows

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** Press the button to the stop; the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
› To **close**, pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** Pull the button briefly to the stop, the window automatically closes fully. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Deactivating/activating buttons in the rear doors

› To **deactivate/activate** the buttons in the rear doors, press the E button. If the buttons are deactivated, the warning light lights up in button E.

Note

▪ After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes.
▪ After the driver or front passenger door is opened, the operation of the window is only possible with the button A » Fig. 52, in which case this is pressed or pulled for approx. 2 seconds.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

The convenience operation for the window offers the option to open/close all the windows at once (or only the window in the driver's door). The convenience operation function can be adjusted individually in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → → **Opening and closing**.

Opening

› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **or:** Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the open position » Fig. 52 *on page 58*.

Closing

› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **or:** Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the closed position » Fig. 52 *on page 58*.
› In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 45 *on page 53*.

The convenience operation will only function correctly if all the windows automatically open/close properly.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's door locking cylinder is only possible within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the respective button is released.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

Repeatedly opening and closing the window can cause the window mechanism to overheat and become temporarily blocked. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the operating mechanisms has cooled down.

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, automatic opening / closing the window can be deactivated. In this case, the system must be **activated** as follows.

Activating window operation

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Lights and visibility

Light

Introduction

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

For the basic position of the light switch, use position **AUTO**.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the light is on, the light-emitting surface demists after a short time.

Operating the lights

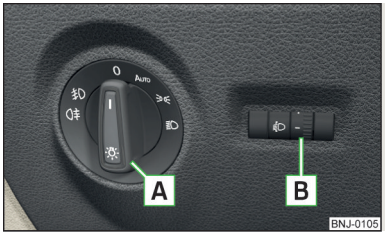


Fig. 54
Light switch and control dial for headlight range adjustment

To **switch the lights on/off**, turn the A » Fig. 54 switch to one of the following positions (equipment-dependent).

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
AUTO Switching the light on/off automatically » page 62
Switching on the parking lights or parking lights on both sides » page 64
Switch on low beam

Depending on the vehicle load, adjust the **headlight range** by turning the controller B » Fig. 54 to the following positions.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

The LEDFront headlights s automatically adjust to vehicle loading and driving conditions, so they do not have manual headlight range control.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions - otherwise there is a risk of an accident.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- If, with a dipped beam, the ignition is turned off, then the dipped beam will automatically switch off and the parking lights will come on. Does not apply to the position **AUTO**, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function . The parking lights are switched off when the ignition key is removed (for vehicles with the start button, after opening the driver's door).
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daytime running lights

The daytime running lights (hereinafter only referred to as "function") lights the front and rear vehicle area (only valid for some countries).

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **0** or **AUTO**.

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The parking aid is activated.

Activating/deactivating function on vehicles with Infotainment

The function can be deactivated/activated in the Infotainment system in menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light**.

Deactivating on vehicles without Infotainment

› Turn off the ignition, pull the indicator/main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push **down** and hold in this position.

› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until an audible signal sounds (about 3 s).

Activating on vehicles without Infotainment

› Turn off the ignition, pull the indicator/main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push **up** and hold in this position.

› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until an audible signal sounds (about 3 s)..

WARNING

Always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

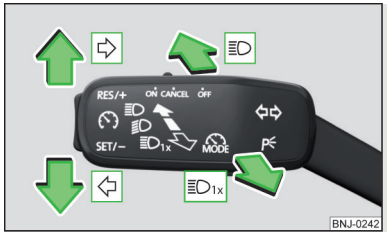


Fig. 55
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Control stalk positions » Fig. 55

⇨ Switch on right turn signal

⇦ Switch on left turn signal

≡D Switch on high beam

≡D1x Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be used even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal** switches off automatically, depending on the steering angle after completing the turn.

Comfort flashing

When the operating lever is pressed lightly up or down, the indicator in question flashes three times.

If during the convenience turn signal, the operating lever is pressed in the opposite direction, the indicating will stop.

Comfort flashing can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light**.

WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving light control



Fig. 56
Light switch: Position AUTO

The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 56 then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering AUTO illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol also illuminates next to the light switch.

Automatic driving light control in the rain (hereafter referred to as function)
The dipped beam is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off automatically about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Setting, activation/deactivation
The following functions can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Light**.

- ▶ Sensitivity adjustment of the sensor for determining the lighting conditions for automatic driving light control
- ▶ Automatic driving-light control during rain

WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control (position **AUTO**) only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions.

CAUTION

Poorer visibility is detected by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.

Light Assist



Fig. 57 **Installation location of the sensor / system on/off**

The system automatically switches the high beam on/off in accordance with the existing traffic (other vehicles) and environmental conditions (e.g. driving through a lit village).

The high beam on/off is controlled by a sensor or a camera » Fig. 57.

Activating / Deactivating the system takes place in the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Light** → **Light Assist**.

Conditions for the system function

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is over 60 km/h or for some countries more than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The windscreen is clean in the sensor area.

Switch on the system

› Push the lever into the sprung position A » Fig. 57. The following indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster display.

Switch off the system

› If the high beam **is** switched on automatically, move the lever into the sprung position B. The warning light goes out. The high beam turns off.
› If the high beam is **is not** switched on automatically, move the lever into the sprung position A. The warning light goes out. The high beam turns on.

The high beam switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h (but the system remains switched on).

If there is a **fault**, the error message will appear in the instrument cluster display. Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

The system is used only for support, thus the driver is not released from his obligation to manually adjust the main or low beam according to the given ambient conditions (e.g. in unfavourable lighting and weather conditions, as when passing poorly lit road users, if necessary, when the area in front of the sensor is covered by an obstacle).

CAUTION

Do not cover the sensor and keep the front screen clean - system functionality can be impaired.

Fog lights/rear fog light

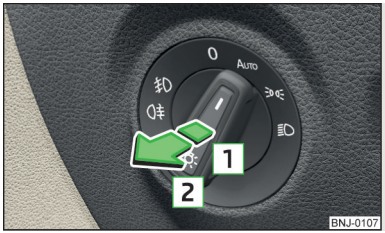


Fig. 58
Light switch - Switch front/rear fog light

Switching on the fog lights / rear fog lights is possible if the following conditions apply.

✓ The lights switch is in position AUTO, or » Fig. 58.

› To **switch on** the **fog lights**, turn the light switch to position 1; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.
› To **turn on** the **rear fog light**, pull the light switch to position 2, the indicator light will light up in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is not fitted with **fog lights**, the **rear fog light** is switched on by pulling out the light switch to the only possible setting.

The fog lights/rear fog light are **switched off** in the reverse order.

Note

If an accessory is connected to the trailer socket, the rear fog lamp does not light up on the vehicle.

function CORNER

The CORNER function automatically switches on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle (e.g. when cornering or steering), if the following conditions are fulfilled.

✓ The turn signal is turned on or the front wheels are severely locked (in the event of conflict between the two versions, has turn signal has the higher priority).
✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position AUTO.

The two functions can be **activated/deactivated and adjusted** in the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Light**.

CAUTION

- Poorer visibility is detected by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 59
Button for hazard warning light system

› To **switch on/off**, press the ⚠ button » Fig. 59.

When first switched on, the turn signal lights and the warning light ⚠ buttons all flash at the same time as the warning lights ⬅ ➡ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system will switch on automatically if one of the airbags is deployed.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning light system is switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle (applies with active comfort flashing).

Parking light

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light on one side

› Switch off the ignition.
› Press the control lever all the way into position ⇨ or ⇦ until it stops » Fig. 55 *on page 61*.

The parking light is turned on, on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Switching on the parking lights on both sides

› Turn the ignition on and turn the light switch to position » page 60.
› Switch off the ignition and lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible warning is turned off.

CAUTION

- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking lights may switch off automatically due to a low battery charge. If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, the parking lights will not switch on automatically!

Driving abroad

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), the headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic.

Therefore, the LEDFront headlight setting must be adjusted by turning on **travel mode** in infotainment in the menu CAR → ⚙ → **light**

Interior lighting

Introduction

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off. With the ignition off (or after a door is opened),the lights will automatically switch off after approximately 10 minutes.

Front interior lights

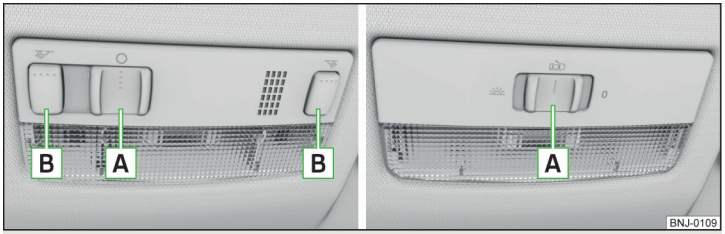


Fig. 60 **Operation of the front light: Version 1/version 2**

Positions of the sliding light switch A » Fig. 60

- Switching on
- 0 Switching off
- Automatic operation

Switching on / off (by pressing the relevant switch B) » Fig. 60

- Reading lamp left
- Reading lamp right

Automatic operation - position

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Rear interior lights

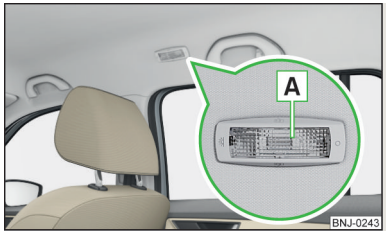


Fig. 61
Interior lights at the rear

Operation (by moving the lens A) » Fig. 61

- Switching on
- Automatic operation (the light is switched on/off automatically together with the front light)
- 0 Switching off

LED storage compartment lighting

The LED lighting illuminates the storage compartment in the centre console.

The **switching on** of the lighting takes place automatically after opening the door; **switching off** occurs automatically after the locking of the vehicle or 30 seconds after the closing of the door.

The brightness level of the lighting when the low beam or parking lights are switched on can be adjusted in the Infotainment menu CAR → → → **Ambient lighting**.

Visibility

Introduction

! WARNING

No objects should be attached to the sun visor that could restrict the view or endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or in a collision.

Rear window heater



Fig. 62
Button for rear window heater

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

The heater for quick defrosting and ventilation of the rear window.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

› To switch the heating **on / off**, press button» Fig. 62.

When the heater is switched on, a lamp illuminates inside the button.

The heating automatically switches off after 10 minutes.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 214, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.

Front sun visors

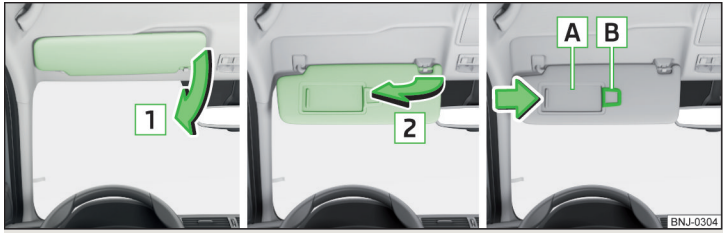


Fig. 63 **Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and parking permit holder**

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 63

1 Swivel cover towards the windscreen
2 Swivel cover towards the door
A Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)
B Ticket holder

Sunshade of the panoramic roof



Fig. 64
Open sun screen

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

The sunshade of the panoramic roof can be **opened** manually in the direction of arrow or **closed** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 64.

WARNING

When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

The windscreen wipers and the wash system operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot are closed.

WARNING

Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

CAUTION

- If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. The wipers must be set to the service position to raise them off the windscreen » page 233.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor.
- Carefully separate frozen windscreen wiper blades from the windscreen and free from snow and ice.
- Handle the windscreen wipers with care - there is a risk of damage to the windscreen by the windscreen wiper arms.
- Do not switch on the ignition when the wiper arm is raised from the windscreen - there is a risk of damage to the bonnet by the wiper arms.

Note

Depending on vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer jets can be heated automatically after starting the engine.

Front wipers and washers

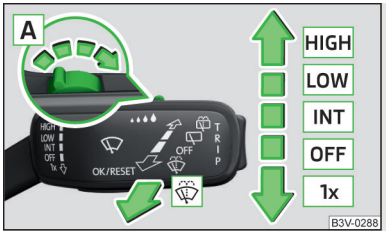


Fig. 65
Operating the front windscreen wipers and washer system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

HIGH High-speed wiping

LOW Slow-speed wiping

INT Depending on equipment fitted:
- Intermittent wiping
- Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain

OFF Wipers and washers off

1x Single wipe of the windscreen (spring-loaded position)

A Setting of windscreen wiper interval for the position **INT** - by setting the switch in the direction of the arrow, the windscreen wipers will wipe more often

Spraying and wiping the screen (spring-loaded position) – after releasing the operating lever the wipers continue for another 1 to 3 strokes

Automatic windscreen wiping during rain can be **activated/deactivated** in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers**.

WARNING

Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is still responsible for setting the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

Note

If the wiping is carried out without interruption, the wiping speed varies depending on the vehicle speed.

Rear wipers and washer

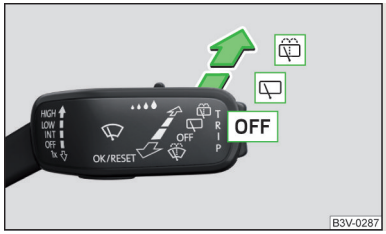


Fig. 66
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position) - after releasing the control stalk, the wipers perform another 2 to 3 wiper strokes

Rear screen wiping

OFF Wipers and washers off

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected. The function can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → → → **Mirrors and wipers.**

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

Headlights are cleaned under the following conditions.

✓ The low beam is switched on.

✓ The outside temperature is about -11° C to +36° C.

To clean the headlights, the headlamp is also sprayed after spraying the windscreen every first and tenth time. Setting the spray interval can be carried out by a specialist garage.

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice (e.g. using the de-icing spray).

Rear view mirror

Introduction

! WARNING

Exterior mirrors increase the field of view, however, they make objects appear smaller and further away. Therefore, use the interior mirror whenever possible for assessing the distances to the vehicles following behind.

! WARNING

- The mirrors with automatic dimming contain electrolyte fluid which may leak if the mirror glass is broken - this can irritate skin, eyes and the respiratory system.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for several minutes plenty of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

Interior mirror dimming

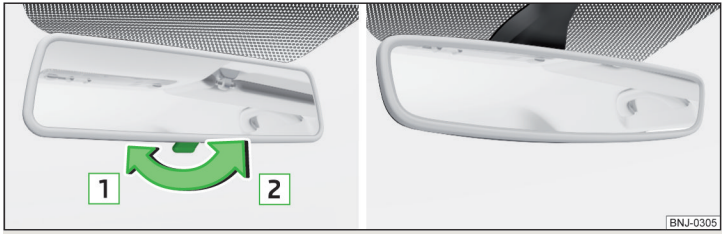


Fig. 67 **Interior rear-view mirror: with manual dimming/auto-darkening**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 67

1 Basic mirror position (not darkened)

2 Mirror dimming

Mirror with automatic dimming

The mirror dimming » Fig. 67 is automatically controlled after the engine start.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

WARNING

- Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) not in the vicinity of the **mirror with automatic dimming**. The illuminated display of an external device can affect the function of the rear-view mirror - it could cause an accident.
- The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not compromised (e.g. by the sunshade at the back). The sensors are located on the front and back of the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

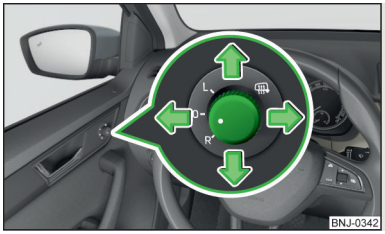


Fig. 68
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

› To **adjust** the mirror surface, move the knob in the direction of arrows » Fig. 68.

If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by carefully pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

The knob for the electrically adjustable mirrors can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 68.

L Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
R Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
Exterior mirror heater (only operates when the engine is running)

Folding in the exterior mirrors

The mirror can be manually folded in towards the side window. To restore it to its original position, fold back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces if the exterior mirror heater is switched on - risk of burns.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – otherwise risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer crushing injuries as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.

Adjusting the front seats

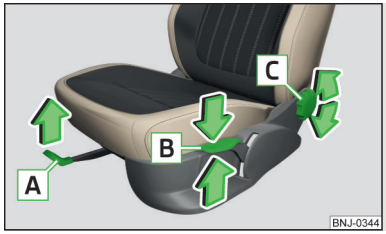


Fig. 69
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

A Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing, the control lever must lock audibly)
B Adjusting the seat height
C Adjusting the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism for the backrest angle.

Armrest setting

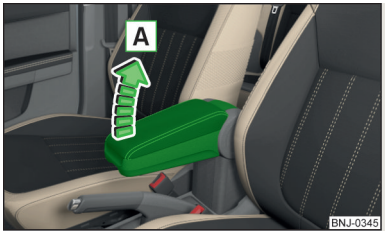


Fig. 70
Adjusting the armrest

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

› To **adjust the height**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow A into one of the locking positions » Fig. 70.
› To **close**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A past the stop and then fold down again.

Rear seats

Seat backrests

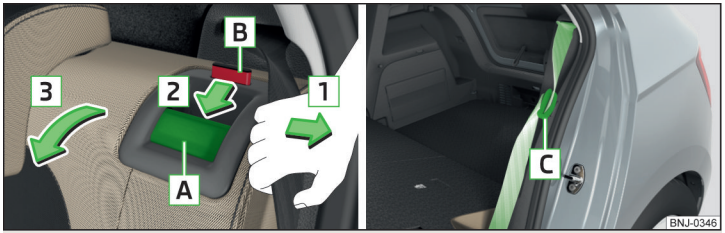


Fig. 71 **Fold seat backrest forwards / standby position of the seat belt**

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the seat backrests. Remove the rear headrests if required » page 72.

Folding forward

› Push the headrest into the seat backrest up to the latch.
› Pull the outer seat belt to the side panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 71. ▸

› Push the release lever A in the direction of arrow 2 and fold down the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 3.

Withthe **undivided** backrest, the two external security belts must be pulled towards the side panel and the release handles A to press on both sides of the backrest simultaneously.

Folding backwards

› Pull the outer seat belt to the side panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 71.
› Raise the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 3 until the release handle A audibly locks. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

In the **undivided** seat back, pull the two outer belts to the side panel. After folding back the backrest, the release handles A should audibly click into place on both sides of the backrest and the red mark B should not be visible on either side of the backrest.

WARNING

- The seat backs in occupied rear seats must be properly engaged.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – risk of injury.

CAUTION

When moving the seat backrest the seat belts should not be trapped - there is a risk of damage to the seat belts.

Note

The belt tongue of the outer seat belts C can be inserted into the side panel. Ready position» Fig. 71.

Rear seat

Applies to the Fabia Estate



Fig. 72 **Fold rear seat forward / remove split rear bench seat**

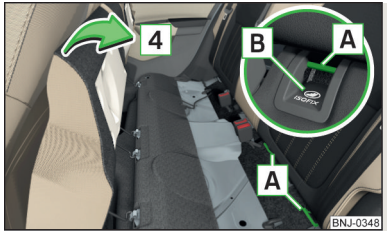


Fig. 73
Fold the rear seat back

The luggage space can be increased by folding the rear seat forward and removing it.

For vehicles with split rear seats, the parts of the rear seat can be folded forward individually and removed.

› To **fold**, pull up the bench in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down in arrow direction 2 » Fig. 72.
› To **Remove**, press the wire clamps in the direction of arrows 3 so that they become detached from the holders, and remove the seat.
› To **use**, press the wire clamps in the direction of arrows 3 and insert it into the brackets.
› To **open**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 73.
› Place the rear seat on the eyelets A, so that the eyelets A click into the recesses in the plastic caps for ISOFIX B .

WARNING

The rear seat may not be pulled in under the eyelets A when folding back. The rear seat could not be properly secured.

CAUTION

The rear seat must not be pulled in under the eyelets A when being folded back - there is a risk of damaging the rear seat.

Headrests

Introduction

Note

- The middle rear headrest is only adjustable in two positions.
- In sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be adjusted in height.

Adjusting the height



Fig. 74 **Setting the height of the back headrest**

Height adjustment of the headrests is the same in the front and rear.

› Grasp the headrest and move **upwards** in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 74.
› To move the headrest **down**, press the securing button A in the direction of arrow 2 and hold it down while pressing the headrest in the direction of arrow 3.

CAUTION

If the tablet holder adapter is secured to the guide rods of the front headrests » page 80, do not push the headrests down to the stop – risk of damaging the headrests.

Removing/inserting

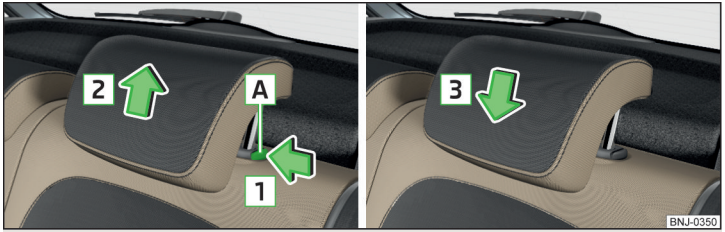


Fig. 75 **Removing/instaling the headrest**

The removal and installation of headrests is the same in the front and rear.

› Before removing/installingthe headrests, fold the corresponding seat backrest slightly forward » page 70.
› To **remove** the headrest, pull it out of the seat backrestup to the latch.
› Press locking button A in the direction of arrow 1, and pull out the head restraint in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 75.
› To **insert** the headrest, push the headrest into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 3 until the locking button clicks into place.

Front seat heater



Fig. 76
Buttons for front seat heater

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

Buttons for the seat heating » Fig. 76

Left seat heating

Right seat heating

› To **turn on**the heater at maximum heat (level 2) press button or .

By repeatedly pressing the button, the heat is turned down until it is completely **switched off**. The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

The seat heating only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

If you are sensitive to pain and/or temperature, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. If the seat heater is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the seats.

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not switch on the heating for unoccupied seats.
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have objects on them (e.g. a child seat, bag or similar).
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have seat covers or protective covers on them.

Note

- If the heaters for the rear seats are set to their highest intensity (level 2), they are automatically switched down to level 1 after 10 minutes.
- If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating switches off automatically » page 214, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.

Useful features

Passenger compartment features

Introduction

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - they could cause an accident!
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat other than objects intended for this purpose (e.g. child safety seat) – risk of accident.
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- For safety reasons, lockable storage compartments should be closed while driving - there is a risk of injury from the opened lid or through the loose objects in the compartment.
- Make sure no objects protrude from the storage compartments - There is a risk of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible loads for the storage compartments and pockets - risk of injury and risk of damage to the compartments and pockets!
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars etc. should only be stored in the ashtray - danger of fire/burns!
- The storage compartments, multimedia holder and waste container are not a substitute for the ashtray and must not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

CAUTION

Do not place any large or sharp objects in the storage compartments and pockets - there is a risk of damage to the compartments and pockets.

Ticket holder



Fig. 77
Ticket holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The ticket holder is provided for the attachment of e.g. parking tickets.

Storage compartments in the doors

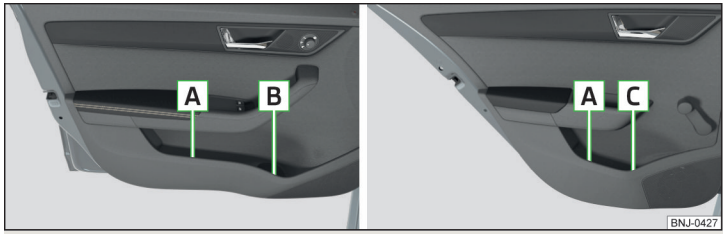


Fig. 78 **Storage compartments: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 78

A Storage compartment
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
C Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartments in the door » page 221.

! WARNING

Storage compartment A » Fig. 78 is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not stick out – danger of restricting the effectiveness of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the front centre console



Fig. 79
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The open storage compartment is in the front of the centre console » Fig. 79.

USB inputs

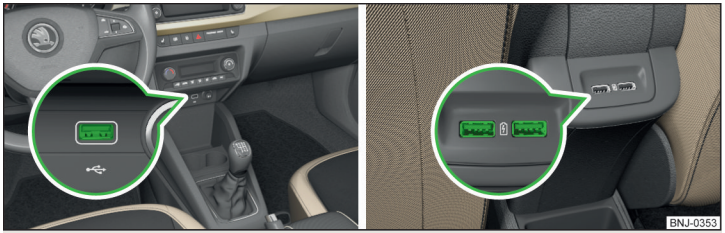


Fig. 80 **Front USB input/rear USB inputs**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The USB input is above the storage compartment in the front centre console and, depending on the equipment, also in the rear centre console » Fig. 80.

The USB input in the front centre console can be used for charging and for data transmission. The USB inputs in the rear centre console can be used only for charging.

Information for use » page 122, *USB input*.

Coin and card holders

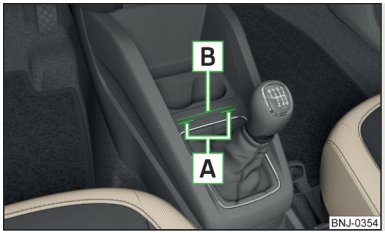


Fig. 81
Coin and card holders

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The coin holder A and card holder B are located in the front centre console » Fig. 81.

Storage compartment in the dashboard



Fig. 82
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The storage compartment is located in the middle part of the panel » Fig. 82.

Cup holders



Fig. 83
Cup holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder » Fig. 83.

! WARNING

- Do not use cups or beakers made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. They may spill as the vehicle moves – there is a risk of scalding.

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Waste container

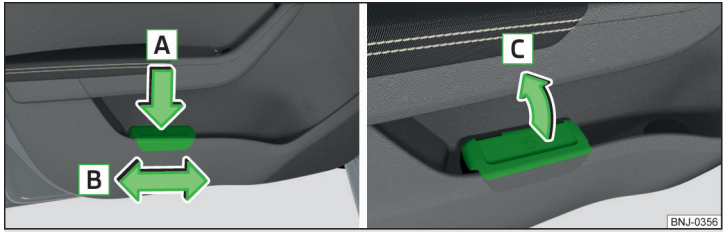


Fig. 84 **Waste container: inserting and moving/opening**

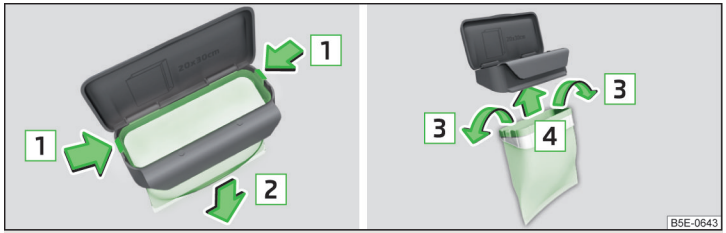


Fig. 85 **Replace bags**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slot in the door.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 84.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow B.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow A » Fig. 84.

Open / close waste container

› Lift the lid in the direction of arrow C » Fig. 84.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 85.
› Pull the bag together with the frame down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 3.
› Place the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 4 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly on the frame.

Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

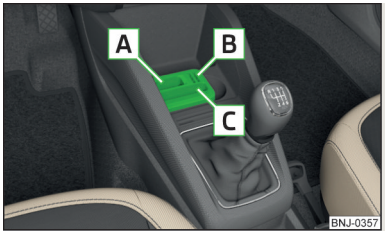


Fig. 86
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

Multimedia holder » Fig. 86

A Storage compartment for storing the vehicle key
B Storage compartment for storing two coins
C Storage compartment for storing a mobile phone

Storage compartment in the armrest



Fig. 87 **Storage compartment / open storage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

› To **open** the armrest in the area A, grasp and lift the lid » Fig. 87.
› To **close**, swing the lid against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

Glasses storage box

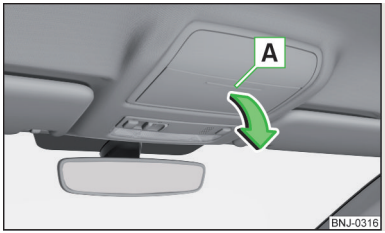


Fig. 88
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

› To **open**, press on the outer edge of the glasses compartment in area A . The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 88.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

! CAUTION

▪ Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
▪ The tray must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

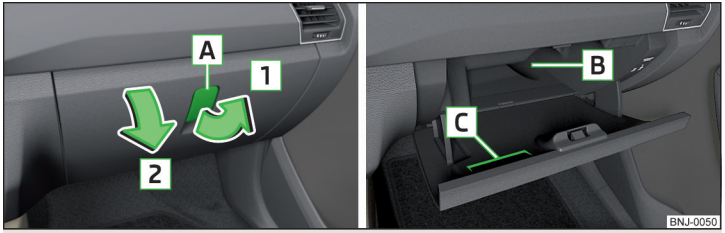


Fig. 89 **Open storage compartment / interior of the storage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

Depending on the equipment provided, the storage compartment is equipped with a room lamp (this lights when opening the compartment), a bottle rack with a capacity of max. 1 l B and a card holder C » Fig. 89.

› To **open**, pull the opening lever A in the direction of arrow 1. The cover folds in the arrow direction 2.
› To **close**, screw in the lid in the opposite direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 3 kg.

Storage compartment in the side of the front seat

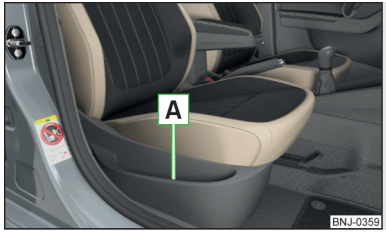


Fig. 90
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The storage compartment A » Fig. 90 is located on the side of the front seat.

Storage compartment for an umbrella



Fig. 91
Storage compartment for an umbrella

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The storage compartment under the passenger seat » Fig. 91 is used for storing an umbrella.

Clothes hook

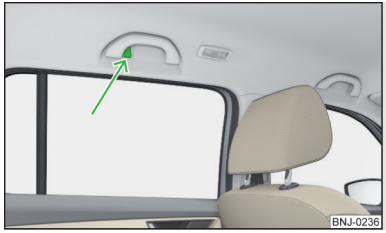


Fig. 92
Clothes hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the handles of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 92.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

! WARNING

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing that has been hung up - is a risk of injury.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes - there is a risk of restricting the effectiveness of head airbags and a danger of injury from the hanger.
- Make sure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impede your vision.

Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats



Fig. 93
Map pockets

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The map pockets are intended for storage of maps, magazines, etc.

Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats



Fig. 94
Storage pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The storage pockets are located on the inside of the front seats » Fig. 94 and are used to store small and light objects (e.g. mobile phones).

The maximum permissible load of each of the pockets is 150 g.

Storage compartment in rear centre console



Fig. 95 **Storage compartment: Version 1 / version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The open storage compartment is in the rear of the centre console » Fig. 95.

Electrical sockets

Introduction

! WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - they could cause an accident!
- Stow all devices safely during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – The is a risk of death!
- The devices may warm up during operation – The is a risk of injury or fire!
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- The 12-volt sockets also work if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.

! CAUTION

- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts - otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Before switching the ignition on / off or before starting the engine, switch off the devices which are connected to the sockets - there is a risk of damage to the equipment due to voltage fluctuations.

12-volt power outlet

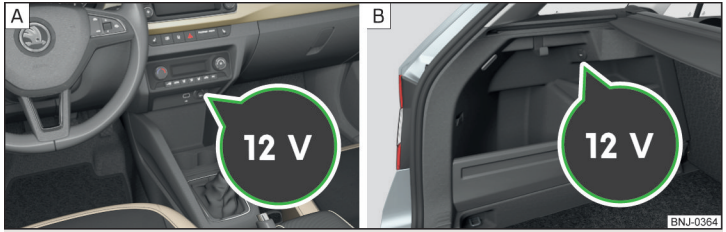


Fig. 96 **Cover for the 12-volt socket: in the central part of the dashboard/in the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 79 first.

› To **use**, remove the cover from the socket » Fig. 96 - A or open the cover of the socket » Fig. 96 - B.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Introduction

The ashtray can be used for disposing of ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like etc

! WARNING

Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

Ashtray

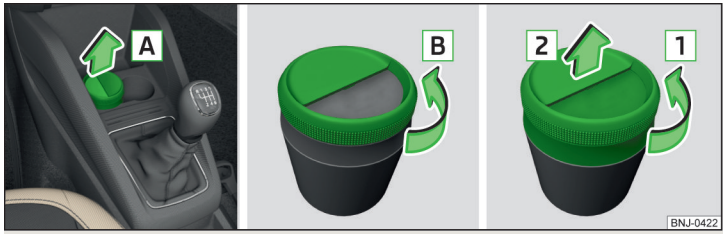


Fig. 97 **Removing/opening/disassembling the ashtray**

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

Removable ashtray

› **Remove** the ashtray in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 97. **Insertion** takes place in reverse order.
› To **open** the ashtray, turn the cover in the direction of arrow B. **Closing** takes place in reverse order.
› To **disassemble** turn the entire cover in the direction 1 until it stops and remove in direction of arrow 2. **Assembly** takes place in reverse order.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 98
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

› To **use** the lighter, push it in as far as the stop and wait until the glowing lighter clicks out again » Fig. 98.
› Take out the glowing lighter instantly, use it and insert it back into the socket.

WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of burning, fire or damage to the vehicle interior.
- Be careful when using the cigarette lighter - It can cause burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12-volt socket.

Tablet holder

Introduction

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone, etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the support.

The maximum permissible load of the compartment is 750 g.

CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Attaching the rear headrests



Fig. 99 **Inserting: Adapter/Holder**

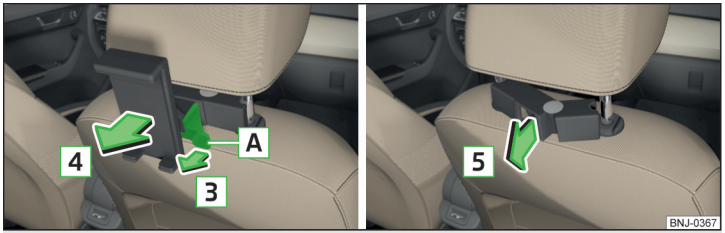


Fig. 100 **Removal: Holder/Adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 80 first.

› To **insert**, attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the front headrest and clip in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 99 » !.
› Clip in the holder in the direction of arrow 2 into the adapter.
› To **remove**, pull on the securing tab A in direction of arrow 3 and take the holder out of the adapter in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 100.
› Press the adapter and remove in the direction of the arrow 5 from the guide rods of the headrest.

! WARNING

Be careful with the adapter – otherwise there is a risk of finger injury.

Handle holder



Fig. 101 **Tilt and rotate holder**

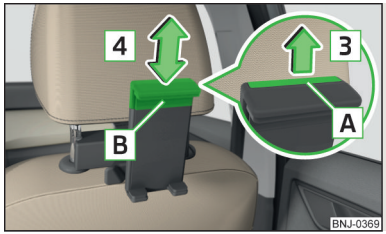


Fig. 102
Adjust holder size

Read and observe ! on page 80 first.

The holder may be **tilted** by 30° in the direction of the arrow 1 and **turned** by 360° in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 101.

› To **adjust the holder size**, pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and push the part B in the direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 102.

i Note

If there is no external device in the holder, then we recommend that the part B is moved down fully. Otherwise, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.

Transport of cargo

Luggage compartment and transporting objects

Introduction

When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in the centre of gravity. Therefore, adjust the speed and driving mode accordingly.

When transporting cargo the instructions below must be followed

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or fixing nets so that they cannot slip.
- Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Match the tyre pressure to the load.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the luggage compartment lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will go out automatically after 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. Heavy objects were not secured sufficiently – There is a risk of injury!
- An unsecured dirt or improperly attached load could slip during a sudden manoeuvre or in an accident in the vehicle - There is a risk of injury!
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.

CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. - these could be damaged.
- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.
- Do not place sharp objects in the nets and storage compartments in the luggage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the net as well as the compartments.
- Put the items in the storage compartments carefully and do not overload them - there is a risk of damage to the compartments.

Fastening elements

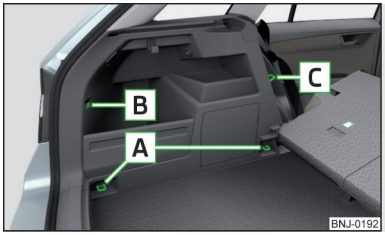


Fig. 103
Fasteners

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 103

A Lashing eyes for securing cargo, fastening nets and multifunction pocket
B Fastener for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket
C Lashing eye for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket

The upper front lashing eye C is located behind the folding rear seat backrest.

The maximum permissible load of the individual lashing eyes A is 350 kg.

Note

The lashing eyes A cannot be used for attaching bags and nets when the variable loading floor is in the upper position » page 89.

Fixing nets

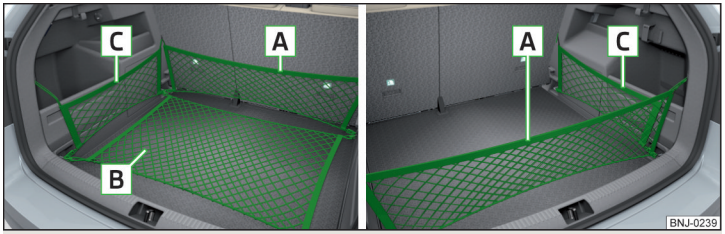


Fig. 104 **Fastening examples for nets**

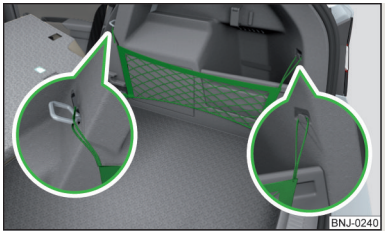


Fig. 105
Fastening vertical pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 104 **and** » Fig. 105

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket (only applies to some vehicles)

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

Multifunction pocket

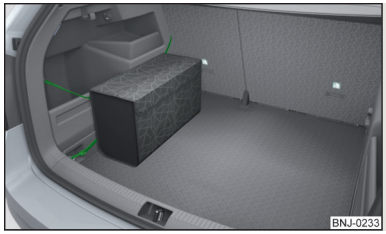


Fig. 106
Securing the multifunction pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The pocket » Fig. 106 can be secured to the fastening elements A, B and C » Fig. 103 *on page 82*.

The maximum permissible load for the bag attached to fastening elements is 3 kg.

! CAUTION

In vehicles with a variable loading floor, it is not possible to secure the bag to the fastening elements.

Hooks



Fig. 107
Hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

A hook for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., is provided on each side of the luggage compartment» Fig. 107.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

CAUTION

- If possible, take the item of luggage suspended from the hook and place it in the storage compartment B » Fig. 112 *on page 86*, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment cover.
- If an item of luggage weighing more than 2.5 kg is suspended on the hook, then we recommend removing the storage compartment cover B » Fig. 112 *on page 86*, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment cover.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe and on page 82 first.

A double-sided floor covering can be fitted in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable (suitable for transporting wet or dirty items).

CAUTION

The double sided floor covering can only be used in vehicles without the variable loading floor» page 89 - There is a risk of damage to the variable loading floor.

Luggage compartment cover

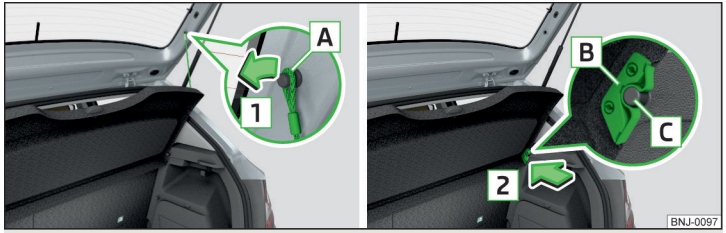


Fig. 108 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe and on page 82 first.

If the support straps A » Fig. 108 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will raise the boot lid cover (hereafter referred to as cover).

The cover can be removed from the vehicle and stowed behind the rear seat backrests if required » Fig. 109 *on page 85*.

The maximum permissible load of the cover is 1 kg.

Removing

› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 108.
› Hold the raised cover and press on the two sides on the underside of the cover in the area of the recess C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fitting

› Place the fixtures B on the cover above the brackets C on the side trim » Fig. 108.
› Press on the two sides to the upper side of the cover in the region of the mounts C. The fixtures B must lock into place in the mounts C on both sides of the luggage compartment.
› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A.

WARNING

Do not place any objects on the cover during the trip - There is a risk of injury if you brake or have a collision!

CAUTION

- Observe the following instructions to avoid canting and the subsequent damage to the cover or the side trim.
  - The cover must be inserted properly and the load must not exceed the height of the cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the raised position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the raise position and the rear backrest.

Other positions of the luggage compartment cover

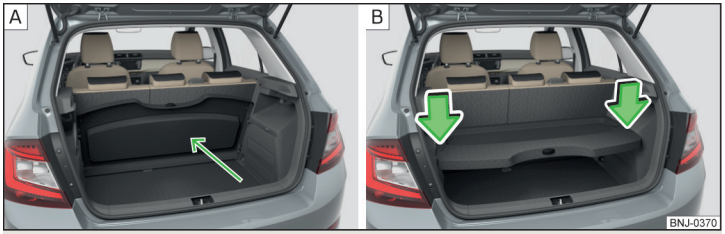


Fig. 109 **Luggage compartment cover: stowed behind the rear seats/in the lower position**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The luggage compartment cover behind the rear seat backrests can be stored » Fig. 109 -A or in the lower position » Fig. 109 - B.

Store cover in the lower position

› Press the top of the cover in the arrow direction » Fig. 109 - B.

In the front area, slots B » Fig. 108 *on page 84* on the cover must be fully engaged with the mounts on the side trim. In the back, the cover must be secured at both ends under the latching.

In the lower position, the cover is designed for storing small objects up to a weight of 2.5 kg in total.

! WARNING

Do not place any objects on the cover during the trip - There is a risk of injury if you brake or have a collision!

Roll-up cover

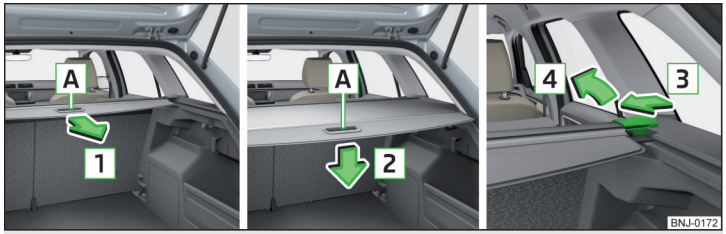


Fig. 110 **Roll-up cover: extending/retracting/removing**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

Extending

› Grasp the cover at grip-point A and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it audibly clicks into place » Fig. 110.

Retracting

› Push the cover in the handle area A in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 110. The cover rolls up automatically. The rolled-up cover can now be removed.

Removing/inserting

› Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 3 and remove the cover in the arrow direction 4 » Fig. 110.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the roll-up cover - there is a risk of damage to the cover and a risk of injury in the event of a sudden stop or a vehicle collision!

! CAUTION

It is possible that the roll-up luggage compartment cover rolls more slowly during winter weather conditions. This is not a defect.

Net partition

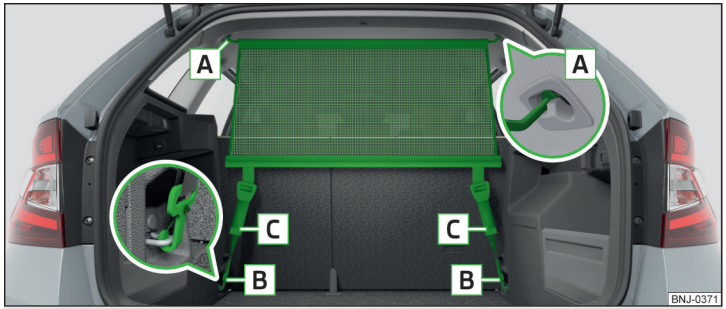


Fig. 111 **Net partition behind the rear seats**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The net partition can be installed behind the rear seats.

For ease of installation / removal of the carabiner B Move the variable loading floor back, remove it from the vehicle if necessary.

Installing/removing

› To **install**, remove the retractable luggage compartment cover » Fig. 110 *on page 85* or the fold the rear seat backrests forwards » page 70.
› First insert the rod into the mount B » Fig. 111 on one side and push it forwards. Insert the transverse rod into the mount C on the other side of the vehicle in the same way.
› Hang the carabines C at the belt ends into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
› Pull the straps firmly at the free ends C.

Ausbauis carried out in the reverse order.

Note

For vehicles with variable loading floor, the nets can be secured only when the variable loading floor is in the lower position» page 89.

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

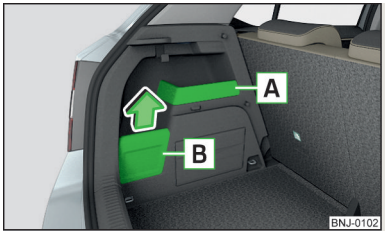


Fig. 112
Storage compartments

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The integrated storage compartment A » Fig. 112 is suitable for stowing small objects weighing up to 1.5 kg in total.

The storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.

The armrest can be removed in the direction of the arrow.

! CAUTION

When handling the cover of the storage compartment B, ensure that this or the luggage compartment trim is not damaged.

Cargo elements

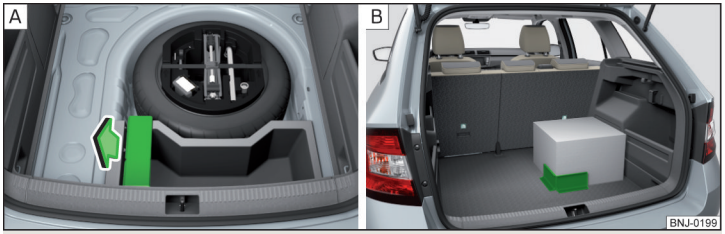


Fig. 113 **Remove cargo element / Load fastening example**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The cargo element is designed for attaching and securing objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

› Before use, remove the Cargo element in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 113 - A.
› Use thecargoelements to secure the load as close as possible to the rear seats» Fig. 113 B.
› After use, stow the Cargo element in its original position.

Flexible storage compartment



Fig. 114
Flexible storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The flexible storage compartment can be installed on either side of the boot » Fig. 114.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

› To **use**,insert the two ends of the storage compartment into the openings in the side trim of the luggage compartment and push the shelf down to lock.
› To**Remove**grasp the storage compartment at the top edges and remove by pulling upwards and towards you.

Storage compartments under the floor



Fig. 115 **Fold the floor back / storage compartment under the floor**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The storage compartment A is located under the floor of the luggage compartment» Fig. 115.

› Lift the rear portion of the floor and fold forward in the direction of arrow 1 - .

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

Removable light

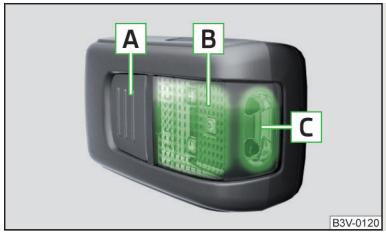


Fig. 116
Removable light

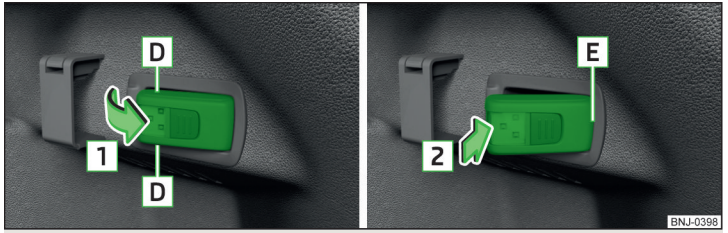


Fig. 117 **Removing light/inserting light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The lamp is for the illumination of the luggage compartment or it can be used as a portable lamp.

The lamp is equipped with a magnet. As a result, this can, for example, be fitted to the vehicle body.

Description of the light » Fig. 116

A Button to turn the light that has been removed on / off
B Part that lights up when the lamp is in the mount
C Part that lights up when the lamp is not in the mount

If the light is in the **mount**, this will illuminate when the boot lid is opened.

› To **remove**, hold the light in the area D and swivel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 117.

› To **switch on** the removed light, press button A » Fig. 116. Pressing the light again will **switch it off**.

› To **insert**, first of all insert the light with the rear part E into the mount » Fig. 117 and then push the light in the direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

If the light is not switched off and is correctly inserted in the mount, the LED diodes in the front part of the light C » Fig. 116 are automatically switched off.

If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, this does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.

Lamp charges

The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type NiMH AAA batteries (voltage 1.2 V). The batteries are charged continuously with the engine running (to fully charge the battery takes approximately 3 hours).

Replace batteries » page 231.

! CAUTION

The light is not waterproof, so it must be protected from humidity - otherwise there is risk of damage.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment

Set in the upper / lower position

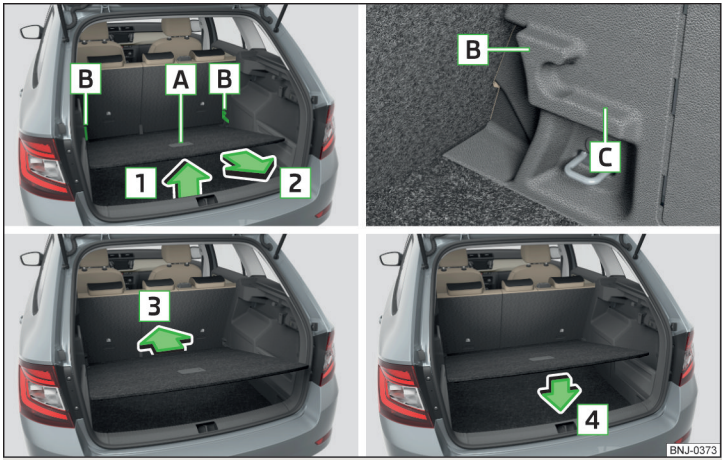


Fig. 118 **Set the variable loading floor to the upper position**

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position as follows.

- Raise the variable loading floor by the handle A in direction of arrow 1 and move partially in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 118.
- To **Set in the upper position**, raise the variable loading floor in the front area and lay on the edge C .
- To **Set the lower position** move the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 2 until it detaches from the slots B, and place the front of the variable loading floor on the floor covering of the luggage compartment.
- Lay the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 3 up to the latch and the arrow 4 .

The area under the variable loading floor can be used to stow small objects. The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position.

Removing/inserting

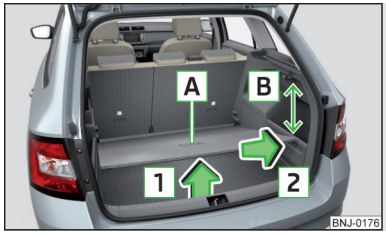


Fig. 119
Remove variable loading floor

Removing

- Lift the variable loading floor at the handle A in the direction of arrow 1 until its rear area is about 15 cm B below the edge of the foldable cover » Fig. 119.
- Remove the variable loading floor from the vehicle by moving it in the direction of arrow 2.

Inserting

- Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 119.
- Insert the variable loading floor matching the front area into the vehicle about 15 cm B beneath the edge of the foldable cover.
- Then follow the same steps as when setting the upper position or the lower position » page 89.

! CAUTION

When removing or inserting the variable loading floor, a distance of 15 cm B » Fig. 119 underneath the edge of the foldable cover must be adhered to, there is a risk of damaging the boot lid seal.

Folding / fastening



Fig. 120 **Fold up variable loading floor / secure variable loading floor**

The variable loading floor can be folded up and secured using a hook on the frame of the boot lid in the two positions (at the top as well as the bottom).

› Fold the variable loading floor together using the handle A and fold in the direction of arrow» Fig. 120.
› Hook the B hook to the frame of the boot lid.

WARNING

The folded-up variable cargo floor limits the driver's view to the rear.

CAUTION

Before closing the boot lid the variable loading floor **must be unhook from the frame**. There is the risk of damage to the hook.

Transportation on the roof rack



Fig. 121 **Attachment points**

Depending on the equipment, the roof bars can be attached at the attachment points » Fig. 121 or to the roof rail.

The attachment points A and B are located on both sides of the vehicle » Fig. 121.

Mounting and dismounting of the roof bars is carried out according to the instructions provided.

Roof load

The maximum permitted weight of the load incl. carriers is 75 kg.

WARNING

The following instructions must be observed to aid road safety when transporting cargo on the roof rack.
- Always distribute the load on the roof rack evenly and secure properly with suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to circumstances.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

The heater heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system works under the following conditions.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above 2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

When the cooling system is switched on, it prevents misting of the windscreen and windows.

It is possible to boost the effectiveness of the cooling system by briefly activating the air recirculation system» page 93.

Health protection

To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.

- The difference between the outside temperature and the inside temperature should not be greater than 5 °C.
- The cooling system should be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner must be carried out by a specialist company.

WARNING

- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting. Otherwise there is a risk of accident.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Note

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling system **condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

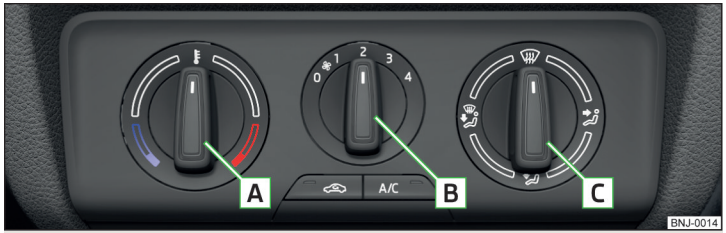


Fig. 122 **Controls of the heating / air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 91 first.

Individual functions can be adjusted or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 122. When the function is activated, a warning light illuminates in the button.

A Setting temperature
- Reduce the temperature/ Increase the temperature

B Set the blower speed (Level 0: Adjust the fan speed (level 0: fan off; level 4: highest speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 93
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Air flow to the windows and the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 93

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Information on cooling system
After pressing the button A/C the indicator light on the button lights up, even if not all the conditions for the cooling system have been met. The cooling system starts to work as soon as the following conditions have been met » page 91.

If recirculated air mode is turned to position when the blower is on, the cooling system is switched on. The cooling system is switched off again by turning the air distribution control out of the position .

If recirculated air mode is outside position when the recirculating air mode is on, the cooling system is switched on.

Note

To ensure adequate thermal comfort, during operation of the manual air conditioning there could be an increase in the engine idle speed in some circumstances.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)



Fig. 123 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 91 first.

Individual functions can be adjusted or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 123.

1 Setting temperature
- ▶ Reduce the temperature/ Increase the temperature

2 Selected temperature
3 Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit
4 Automatic operation of the air conditioning system is switched on
5 Intense air flow turned on to the windscreen
6 Direction of air flow
7 Recirculated air mode activated
8 Cooling system activated
9 Set blower speed
10 Set the fan speed (the set fan speed is indicated by the corresponding number of segments in the display)
- ▶ Turn to the left: Decrease speed / switch off Climatronic
- ▶ Turn to the right: Increase speed

11 Interior temperature sensor

MAX Switching the intensive airflow to the front windscreen on/off - when this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button

AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 93

Switching the airflow to the windows on and off

Switching the airflow to the upper body on and off

Switching the airflow to the footwell on and off

Switch recirculation on/off » page 93

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

When this function is switched on, the corresponding icon appears in the display.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active, whereby the lowest temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Set the temperature
In the range between 16 °C to 29° C, an automatic temperature control takes place.

At a temperature setting below 16 ° C, LO lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum cooling performance**.

At a temperature setting over 29° C, HI lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum heating output**.

Switching between Celsius and Fahrenheit
Press the MAX and A/C buttons simultaneously and hold for about 2 s, the display shows the desired unit (position 3 » Fig. 123).

CAUTION

Do not cover the interior temperature sensor 11 » Fig. 123 – the function of the Climatronic could be affected.

Note

In order to ensure adequate thermal comfort, there may be an increase in engine idle speed during operation of the Climatronic in some circumstances.

Climatronic - automatic operation

Read and observe ! on page 91 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

› To **switch on** press the AUTO button. The display shows AUTO (pos. 4 » Fig. 123 *on page 92*).
› To **turn off**, press any button for the air distribution or change the blower speed. The temperature contro lis continued.

Recirculated air mode

Read and observe ! on page 91 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle. In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

› To **switch on/off**, press the button.

Heater

If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation mode is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is **switched off automatically**.

Individually controlled air conditioning

Recirculated air mode is **switched on automatically** if the following conditions are met.

✓ The blower is switched on.
✓ The airflow adjuster is outside position .
✓ The temperature controller is turned to the left.

If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation mode is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is **automatically switched off**.

Climatronic

If humidity increases in the vehicle, an automatic shutdown of air recirculation can occur.

WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because no fresh air is fed through from the outside. “Stale air” may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. As soon as windows mist up, turn on the recirculation system immediately - The is a risk of an accident!

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from the interior is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlet vents

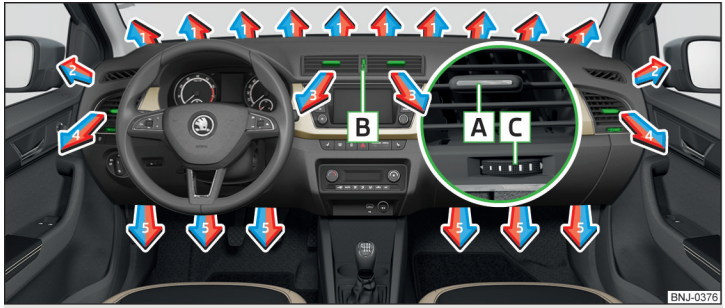


Fig. 124 **Air outlet vents**

Read and observe ! on page 91 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 124, the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

The airflow direction is set by moving the adjustment element A » Fig. 124 in the desired direction.

Opening

› Turn the regulator B upwards » Fig. 124.
› Turn the regulator B to the right.

Closing

› Turn the regulator B downwards » Fig. 124.
› Turn the regulator B to the left.

Depending on the setting for air distribution, the air will flow from the following air vents.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Air outlet vents » Fig. 124
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5
	3, 4
	4, 5

CAUTION

Do not cover the air vents - the air distribution could be compromised.

Infotainment

Introductory information

Important information

Introduction to the subject

WARNING

- Only use Infotainment in such a way that you have control of the vehicle in every traffic situation (e.g. do not write text messages while driving, do not link or connect the telephone, do not work with the contact list, do not enter any destinations, do not connect WLAN or SmartLink etc.) – Otherwise there is a risk of an accident!
- Always route the connection cable of the external device such that is does not restrict you when driving.

WARNING

- Adjust the volume to ensure that acoustic signals from outside the vehicle, e.g. the police, ambulances and fire engines, can be heard at all times.
- High volumes can cause hearing damage.

CAUTION

In some countries, some Infotainment functions can no longer be selected when the vehicle is running faster than a certain speed. This is not a malfunction, but complies with the national legal regulations.

Mobile devices and applications

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.



Fig. 125
QR code with reference to web pages for checking the compatibility of devices

The availability of some of the functions described in this Owner's Manual depends on the type of device to be connected and the applications installed in it.

Compatibility
On the ŠKODA pages, check to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile devices. This verification is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 125 **or** after typing the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

Applications
Applications can be installed in external devices (e.g. mobile, tablet) making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO can accept no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Infotainment overview

Description – Infotainment Amundsen



Fig. 126 **Infotainment Amundsen**

⏻ Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
⊙ Control dial for calls and confirmations
1 RADIO - *Radio* menu » page 115
2 MEDIA - *Media* menu » page 119
3 PHONE - *Telephone* menu » page 129
4 VOICE - Voice control
5 NAV - *Navigation* menu » page 143
6 TMC - Target-oriented traffic information » page 159
7 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 161
8 MENU - Overview of Infotainment menus
9 Touch screen » page 97

Description – Infotainment Swing



Fig. 127 **Infotainment Swing**

⏻ Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
⊙ Control dial for calls and confirmations
1 RADIO - *Radio* menu » page 115
2 MEDIA - *Media* menu » page 119
3 Depending on equipment fitted:
- PHONE - *Telephone* menu » page 129
- MUTE Muting

4 SETUP - Infotainment settings
5 Depending on equipment fitted:
- APP/ - Menu SmartLink (Press) / turn on / off the voice control function SmartLink (hold) » page 138
- SOUND - Sound settings » page 111

6 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 161
7 Touch screen » page 97
8 SD card slot

Description – Infotainment Blues

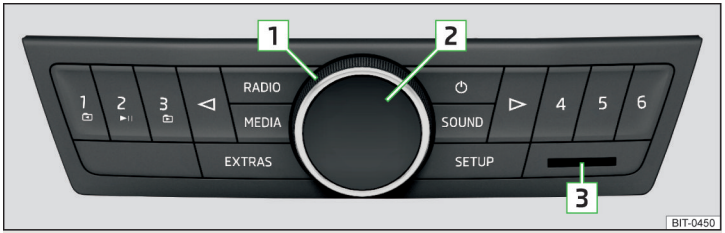


Fig. 128 **Infotainment Blues**

1 Dial (hereinafter only symbol ⊙)
2 Display
3 SD card slot
⏻ Switches Infotainment on/off
RADIO *Radio* menu » page 115 / Select radio frequency range
MEDIA *Media* menu » page 119 / Select audio source
EXTRAS Settings of the selected menu (*Radio* » page 114 /*Media* » page 114)
SETUP Infotainment settings » page 114
SOUND - Sound settings » page 114
◁ / ▷ Backward / forward movement / settings of the selected menu item values
1 - 6 Function keys (each of the functions for these keys is described in the relevant chapters)

External module

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

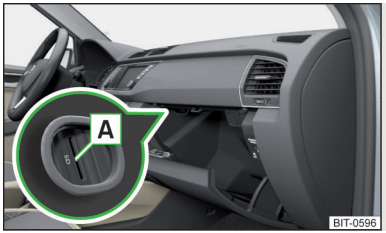


Fig. 129
External module: Infotainment Amundsen

The external module is located in the storage compartment on the front passenger side » Fig. 129.

Only the SD1 card slot A is visible.

Touch screen

The Infotainment can be operated by **lightly touching the screen with your fingers**.

The brightness level of the screen can be set by » page 105 or » page 111.

To protect the screen, a suitable protective film for touch screens can be used.

The screen can be cleaned with a soft cloth and pure spirit if necessary.

Infotainment operation

Infotainment operation

Screen areas

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.



Fig. 130
Screen areas

Description of the display » Fig. 130

A Status line with time and outdoor temperature data and other information
B Information and operation of the current menu
C Function surfaces of the current menu

Operation principles

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

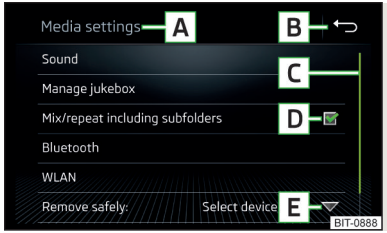


Fig. 131
Screen display

Description of the display » Fig. 131

A Name of the current menu
B Return to the higher-level menu

C Scroll symbol – moving in the menu is possible by moving fingers up or down on the scroll symbol

D Menu item with “checkbox”
- ☑ - Function is switched on
- ☐ - Function is switched off

E ▼ Opens a sub-menu of the menu item with a “pop-up window”

Function surfaces
The screen areas which confirm a function or a menu are called **“function surfaces”**.
- **White text** – the surface is active and thus selectable
- **Grey text** – the surface is inactive and therefore not selectable
- **Green frame** – currently selected surface

Selecting a menu/menu item/function
- Drag your finger over the screen in the required direction.
- By moving your finger over the scroll bar
- By turning the dial ⊙.

Confirming a menu/menu item/function
- By tapping on the function surface.
- By pressing the dial ⊙.

Returning to higher-level menu
- By tapping on the function surface ⮌.
- By tapping on the screen outside of the “pop-up window”.
- By pressing the corresponding button next to the screen (e.g. in the menu *Media*, by pressing the MEDIA button).

Selecting a menu item/function value
- ⊙ - Selected menu item/function value
- ○ - Deselected menu item/function value

Setting a value
- By tapping on the function surface ◁ or ▷ the bottom of the screen.
- By touching or moving your finger over the scale.
- By turning the dial ⊙.

i Note
Depending on the equipment, the Infotainment can also be operated by means of the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel. Further information » page 47.

Operating principles and display areas

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

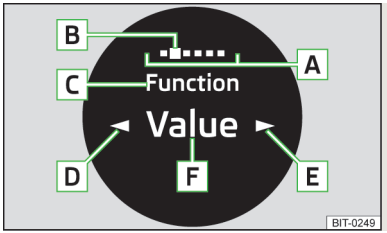


Fig. 132
Display

Description of the display » Fig. 132

A Total number of menu items for each setting

B Position of the current menu item

C Name of the current menu item

D Go to previous menu item value

E Go to next menu item value

F Current menu item value

Setting a value
The desired value of the selected item will be set to one of the following ways.
- By pressing button ◁ or ▷.
- By turning the dial ⊙.

Exit setting
To exit setting, press one of the buttons 1 - 6.

If the device is not being operated, the display switches off after a few seconds in the last selected mode of (*Radio* or *Media*).

Operating the menus

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

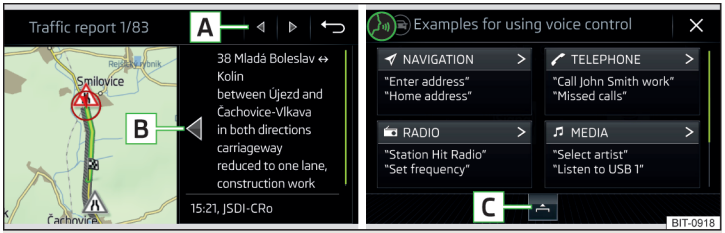


Fig. 133 **Operating the menus**

Operating the menus » Fig. 133

A Browsing the menu, list entries

B Expand/reduce the menu window

C Open / close the menu window

× Close the menu window

Alphanumeric keyboard

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.



Fig. 134
Example of the keyboard display

The alphanumeric keyboard is used to enter letters, numbers and characters.

Description of the alphanumeric keyboard » Fig. 134

A Input line

B Context-dependent:
- ⇧/⇧ - Toggle upper case to lower case and vice versa
- §&# - Switch to special characters
- 123 - Switch to numbers

C Context-dependent:
- 123 - Switch to numbers
- ABC - Switch to Latin letters
- АБВ - Switch to Cyrillic letters

⋮≡ - Display of visited entries (the number of visited entries is displayed in the function surface)

⌫ Erase the entered characters

◿ Hold to display the variants of the respective letters.

🌐 / 🌍 Switch between keyboards with specific characters of the selected languages » page 105 or » page 111

⎵ Space

< Move the cursor within the input line to the left

> Move the cursor within the input line to the right

OK Confirmation of the entered number

Search
While entering characters, a search is made for corresponding entries.

The entry to be searched for (such as a telephone contact) must be entered along with any special characters (diacritics).

By tapping on the function surface ⋮≡ a list of matching entries opens.

Switching Infotainment on/off

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing, Blues
› To **switch on/off** Infotainment, press ⏻.

Automatic switch-on of Infotainment
If Infotainment was not switched off with ⏻ before the ignition was switched off, it will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on.

Automatic switch-off of Infotainment
If the vehicle key is pulled out of the ignition lock while Infotainment is switched on, Infotainment will switch off automatically.

If the vehicle is fitted with the starter button, Infotainment will switch off automatically after the engine is switched off and the door is opened.

With the ignition off, Infotainment will automatically switch off after about 30 minutes.

Infotainment switches off automatically under certain circumstances. Infotainment informs you of this via a text message on the Infotainment display.

Infotainment restart
If Infotainment stops responding (if it "freezes"), it can be restarted by pressing and holding ⏻ for longer than 10 s (does not apply to Infotainment Blues).

Show time and date on the screen

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Standby mode
With the ignition on and infotainment off (Standbymode), it is possible to display the time and date on the Infotainment screen.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen
▶ To switch the time and date display on/off, press the MENU button, then tap the function surface ⚙ → **Screen Show clock in standby mode**.

The display mode can be changed by finger motion across the screen sideways.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
▶ To switch the time and date display on/off, press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Screen** → **Show clock in standby mode**.

"Screen off" mode
With the ignition on and functions **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** and **Display clock when screen is off** » page 105 enabled, it is possible to display the time and date when the Infotainment screen is switched off.

The display type depends on the display mode selected in standby mode (does not apply to the Infotainment Swing).

Adjusting the volume

Every change in volume is displayed on the screen.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing
› To **increase the volume**, turn the controller ⏻ clockwise.
› To **decrease the volume**, turn the controller ⏻ anticlockwise.
› To **mute**, turn the controller ⏻ anticlockwise to 0.
› **or:** To **activate/deactivate the mute setting**, press the button MUTE (applies to Infotainment Swing).

Applies to Infotainment Blues
› To **increase the volume**, turn the control switch 1 » Fig. 128 *on page 96* clockwise.
› To **decrease the volume**, turn the control switch 1 anticlockwise.
› To **mute**, turn the controller 1 anticlockwise to 0.

The following symbol appears on the screen when the sound is muted 🔇.

If, at the time of muting, sound is being played from a source in the *Media* menu, then the playback is stopped.

CAUTION
- High volumes can cause sound resonance in the vehicle.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.

Infotainment menus

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

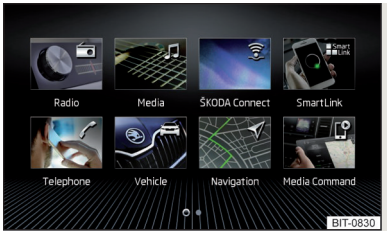


Fig. 135
Overview of Infotainment menus: Grid display

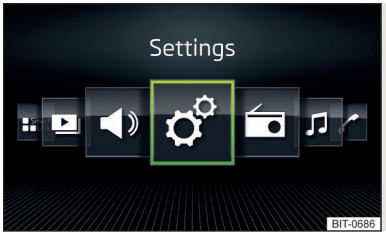


Fig. 136
Overview of Infotainment menus: List

› To **display the overview of Infotainment menus**, press the MENU button.
› To **set the display mode**, press the button MENU, then tap the function surface → **Screen** → **Menu:**.
› Select the **Grid** » Fig. 135 or **Horizont. Display** » Fig. 136 option.

Overview of Infotainment menus

Radio menu » page 115
Media menu » page 119
"ŠKODA Connect" Online Services » page 12
SmartLink menu » page 138
With a connection established to an external device, the actual connection is shown instead of a symbol
- **Android Auto** » page 139
- **Apple CarPlay** » page 140
- **MirrorLink®** » page 141

Telephone menu » page 129
Vehicle system settings » page 161
Navigation menu » page 143 (Applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
List of traffic reports (TMC) (applies to Infotainment Amundsen) » page 159
Media Command menu (Applies to Infotainment Amundsen) » page 127
Images menu » page 126
- Sound settings » page 105
Infotainment settings » page 105

Configuration wizard

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

The configuration wizard is **automatically displayed** if there are at least two non-selected menu items after turning on the Infotainment.

› For **manual display** in Infotainment Amundsen, press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **Configuration wizard**.
› For **manual display** in Infotainment Swing, press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Configuration wizard**.

The Configuration wizard allows you to set the following menu items in sequence.

Time and date format
Storing the radio station with the strongest reception signal at present
Pairing and connecting a telephone to the Infotainment system
Home address (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
Setting "ŠKODA Connect" online services

The selected menu item is marked with the ✓ symbol.

Operating using an application in the external device

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing.

Some Infotainment functions can be operated using an application in the supported external device.

For the complete functionality of the application, data transmission from external devices must be activated and, if necessary, operation of the Infotainment via the application must be approved.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

› Activate data transfer in Infotainment. To do this, press the MENU button and then tap function surface → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA Apps**.
› Release Infotainment operation using the application. To do this, press the MENU button and then tap function surface Tap→ **Mobile device data transfer** → **Operation via apps:** → **Confirm/Allow** .
› Connect Infotainment to an external device via WLAN » page 137.
› In the external device, launch an application for Infotainment operation (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

Applies to Infotainment Swing

› Activate data transfer in Infotainment. Press the SETUP button and then tap on the function surface **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**.

Note

The description of Infotainment operation using ŠKODA Media Command is part of the application.

Voice control

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The navigation, telephone, radio and media menus can be operated by voice commands.

The voice control system can be used either by the driver or by the front passenger.

Function requirements for voice control

✓ Infotainment is switched on.

✓ No telephone call is being made using a telephone connected to Infotainment.

✓ The parking aid is not active.

Requirements for optimum voice command recognition

- The voice commands must only be issued when the symbol is displayed on the Infotainment screen and the input tone has completely faded.
- Speak at your normal volume without intonation and long pauses.
- Avoid bad pronunciation.
- Close the doors and windows in order to prevent environmental influences from interfering with the function of the voice control.
- You are advised to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the sound of your voice is not drowned out by the increased ambient noise.
- During voice control, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.

WARNING

The emergency number should be dialled manually. Your voice commands may not be recognised in such situations. The telephone connection may not be established or the connection may take too much time to complete.

CAUTION

- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.
- For some Infotainment languages, voice control is not available. Infotainment indicates this through a text message that is displayed on the screen after setting the Infotainment language.

Note

During voice control, no navigation announcements and traffic announcements are played.

Switching voice control on/off



Fig. 137
Voice control: Main menu

Switch on

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel **or** button VOICE on the Infotainment system.

The **main menu** is displayed » Fig. 137.

Switch off

› Press the button twice on the multifunction steering wheel **or** button VOICE on the Infotainment system.

› **or**: Issue the voice command "**End voice control**".

Operation principle

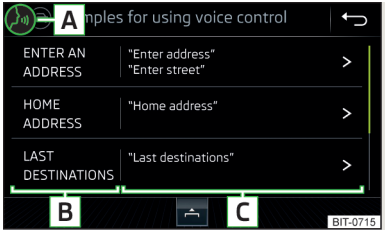


Fig. 138
Example of screen display

The voice control main menu » Fig. 137 *on page 102* contains basic voice commands for the individual menus.

Other voice commands are displayed by tapping the respective function surface, if required, by issuing the name of respective command (e.g. navigation). The screen shows the following » Fig. 138.

A Context-dependent:
- The system is waiting for a voice command
- The system recognises a voice command
- The system plays a message
- Voice command entry was stopped

B Available list entries
C Possible voice commands
> Displaying other possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be issued are indicated in “quotation marks”.

Note
Depending on the equipment, the voice control symbols A » Fig. 138 are also displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Voice commands

Enter
The voice commands must only be issued when the symbol is displayed on the Infotainment screen and the input tone has completely faded. The input tone can be switched on/off. To do this, press the MENU button and then tap function surface → **Voice control**.

It is not necessary to wait for the end of message playback when Infotainment is playing a message. The Infotainment message can be terminated by pressing the button VOICE or button on the multifunction steering wheel. Then a voice command can be issued. Voice control is much faster as a result.

Stop
This allows more time to enter the voice command (e.g. in the list of retrieved contacts).

The process for entering voice commands can be stopped by moving a finger up/down across the screen or by turning the controller .

When stopping, the symbol changes from to .

Restore
The procedure for entering voice commands can be restarted in one of the following ways.
- By tapping on the function surface .
- By pressing the button VOICE on the Infotainment.
- By pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Not recognising a voice command
If a voice command is not recognised by the Infotainment system three times in succession, then voice control is stopped.

Correction of a voice command input
A voice command can be corrected, modified or re-entered by pressing the button VOICE or the button on the multifunction steering wheel. However, this is only possible as long as the symbol is displayed on the screen.

You do not have to wait until the voice command is recognised by Infotainment.

Voice commands can be used during voice control

Voice command	Function
“Back”	Return to the previous menu
“Help”	Reproduce and display possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be used while browsing the list entries

Voice command	Function
“Next page”	Browse menu/list/directory
“Previous page”	
“First page”	
“Last page”	

Additional information

Navigation
To the destination, you are first required to issue the command **“enter address”** and then follow Infotainment instructions.

It is not necessary to spell city and street names if the entered destination is located in a country that has no voice control available for the language.

Online POI search
When “Infotainment Online” » page 17 services are activated, a POI search can also be carried out online by issuing the voice command **“Find online POI”**.

Radio
In order for a radio station to be selected using voice command, the station must be stored in the list of available stations » page 117 or in the preset list » page 117.

Updating the Infotainment software



Fig. 139
Available software updates on the ŠKODA websites

The software update ensures optimum operation of Infotainment (e.g. compatibility with new telephones).

Information on Infotainment compatibility can be found on the following ŠKODA Internet pages. This is done by scanning the QR code » Fig. 139 **or** entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen
- To **determine the software version**, press the MENU button then tap the function surface → **System information**.
- To **start the software update**, press the MENU button, then tap the function surface → **System information** → **Update software**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
- To **determine the software version**, press the SETUP button, then tap the **System information** function surface.
- To **start the software update**, press the SETUP button, then tap the **System information** → **Update software** function surface.

Infotainment settings - Amundsen

Infotainment system settings

Sound settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ◁)) .

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Radio announcements** - Volume adjustment of traffic announcements (TP)
  - **Navigation announcements** - Volume setting for navigation announcements
  - **Voice control** - Volume setting for voice output
  - **Maximum switch-on volume** - Set the maximum volume when switching on Infotainment
  - **Speed dependent Volume adjustment** - Increases the volume as speed increases
  - **Bluetooth audio:** - Volume setting of the device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile of the connected external device
    - **Quiet** - Low volume
    - **Medium** - Medium volume
    - **Loud** - High volume
  - **Entertainment fading while parking** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) when the parking aid is activated
  - **Entertainment fading (Navigation)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) in the event of a navigation announcement
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equalizer
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **ŠKODA Surround** - Switch surround sound on/off (cannot be used in *Radio* mode)
- **Virtual Subwoofer** -Switch virtual subwoofer on/off (cannot be used in *Radio* mode)
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch audible tone when touching the screen on/off
- **No navigation announcements during calls** - Switches the navigation prompts on or off during a telephone conversation

Display settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ⚙ Tap→ **Screen**.

- **Menu:** Setting the Infotainment menu display
  - **Horizont. Display** - Horizontal display » Fig. 136 *on page 101*
  - **Grid display** - Grid display » Fig. 135 *on page 100*
- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable/disable the automatic power off function
- **Display clock when screen is off** - Time and date display when the screen is switched off
- **Brightness:** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ⚙ → **Time and date**.

- **Clock time source:** Time source settings: manual/GPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Summer (DST)** - Switches summer time on/off
- **Automatic summer time** - Switches the automatic switch to summer time on/off
- **Time zone:** - Select the time zone
- **Time format:** - Set the time format
- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Set the date format

Infotainment language settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ⚙ → **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

In some languages, after selecting the function surface, **Female** or **Male** are displayed for the choice of Infotainment voice prompts.

i Note

- When a language is selected which does not support voice control, Infotainment will indicate this with a message on the screen.
- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

More keypad languages settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ⚙ → **Additional keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow characters other than those in the currently selected language to be entered.

Unit settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ☞ Tap on→ **Units** .

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Fuel consumption:** - Consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tyre pressure

Settings for data transfer

Activated data transfer enables data transfer between the Infotainment system and the external device or the operation of some Infotainment functions using the applications of the external device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ☞ → **Mobile device data transfer**.

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps** - Switch data transfer on and off
- **Use apps to operate:** - Setting Infotainment operation via the applications of the external device (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
  - **Deactivate** - Deactivation of Infotainment operation via an external device
  - **Confirm** - Infotainment operation with required confirmation
  - **Allow** - Infotainment operation without required confirmation

Voice control settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ☞ → **Voice control**.

- **Example commands (infotainment syst.)** - Switch menu display with language commands in the Infotainment screen when activating voice control
- **Example commands (instrument cluster)** - Turn on/off display of the menu containing voice commands when voice control is activated
- **Voice control session start tone** - Activate/deactivate the audible signal when turning on the voice control
- **Voice control session end tone** - Activate/deactivate the audible signal when voice control ends
- **Input tone in voice dialogue** - Activate/deactivate the audible signal for the voice input
- **End tone in voice dialogue** - Activate/deactivate the audible signal for the voice input

Safe removal of the external device

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ☞ **Remove safely:** and select the external device to be removed.

Reset to factory settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ☞ → **Factory settings**.

In this menu, all or only selected settings can be restored.

Bluetooth® settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ☞ → **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch the Bluetooth® function on/off
- **Visibility:** Switch the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for other Bluetooth® devices on/off
- **Name:** - Changing the name of the Bluetooth® device
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of paired Bluetooth ® devices
- **Find devices** - Search for available Bluetooth® devices
- **Bluetooth audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Activate/deactivate the ability to connect a Bluetooth® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

Wireless settings

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ☞ → **WLAN**.

- **WLAN** - List of available hotspots of external devices
  - **WLAN** - Switch Infotainment WLAN on/off
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establish a secure connection to the hotspot of the external device using WPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
  - **Manual settings** - Parameter settings for searching and connecting to the hotspot of the external device
    - **Network name** - Enter the Hotspot name
    - **Network key** - Access passkey setting

- **Security level:** Security setting (WPA2 always set)
- **Connect** - Establish a connection
- **Find** - Search / Restore the list of available hotspots

- **Mobile hotspot** - Infotainment hotspot setting (the symbol displayed with the number of connected external devices)
  - **Mobile hotspot** - Switch the Infotainment hotspot on/off
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establish a secure connection to the Infotainment hotspot via WPS (applies to Amundsen)
  - **Hotspot (WLAN) settings** - Parameter settings for connection to the Infotainment hotspot
    - **Security level:** Security setting (WPA2 always set)
    - **Network key** - Input of the access password
    - **SSID: ...** - Name of the infotainment Hotspots
    - **Do not send network name (SSID)** -Turn Infotainment hotspot visibility on/off
    - **Store** - Storage of the parameters set for the Infotainment hotspot

Network settings

Applies to infotainment Amundsen with the connected Carstick device.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Network**.

- **Network settings** - Sets the data connection from the associated telephone service provider (APN settings)
  - **Access point name: ...** - Setting of the access point name
  - **User name: ...** - Setting of the user name
  - **Password: ...** - Password setting
  - **Authentication:** Sets the check type
    - **Normal** - Without verification
    - **Safe** - Verification required
  - **Reset Access Point (APN)** - Delete the parameters for the network setting
  - **Store** - Saves the parameters for the network setting
- **Network provider: ...** - Selection of the network provider (the menu item is visible when the SIM card is inserted in the CarStick device)
- **Data roaming** - Enable/disable the use of data roaming connection
- **Current connection details** - Display of information on data downloaded (tap the function surface **Reset** to delete the data information)
- **Data connection:** - Usage settings for the data connection (Internet connection) of the SIM card inserted in the CarStick device
  - **Off** - Use of the data connection is not possible
  - **Ask** - Use of the data connection is only possible after it has been confirmed
  - **On** - Use of the data connection is possible at any time

ŠKODA Connect Online Services settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)**.

- **Services Management** - Information on licensing of the respective online services and the option to switch them on/off
- **registration** - Enter the registration PIN code for online services (in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal receive)

System information

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **System information**.

The information available will be displayed, for example regarding the Infotainment hardware and software, the Bluetooth® software version, the navigation database version, etc.

› To **Update** the Infotainment software, Bluetooth® software version, etc., tap on the function surface **Update software**.
› To **Update** the POI categories created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, tap on the function surface **Online update**.

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting ranges

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface .

- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Scan** - Automatic playback of short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range

- **Arrow buttons:** - Setting the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Preset list** - Change between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Station list** - Change between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches TP traffic program on/off
- **Delete presets** - Deletes the preset buttons
- **Station logos** - Manual management of station logos
- **Radio text** - Switches the radio text display (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Advanced settings** - Other settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range (FM and DAB)

Advanced settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Autostore station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **Region for station logo:** - Setting the region for station logo
- **Automatic frequency control (AF)** - Activates/deactivates the search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played
- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - enable/disable RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)
- **RDS Regional:** Switch on/off automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Advanced settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Autostore station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **DAB traffic announcements** - Switch DAB traffic announcements on/off
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch other announcements on/off (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB - DAB station tracking** - Activate/deactivate automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Automatic DAB - FM switching** - Activate/deactivate auto-switching from DAB to the FM broadcasting range if the DAB signal is lost

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by (**FM**) while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

Media menu settings

› In the main *Media* menu, tap function surface .

- **Sound** - Sound settings
- **Mix/repeat including subfolders** - Activate/deactivate the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **WLAN** - WLAN settings (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- **Remove safely:** - Safe removal of the external device
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches the traffic program on/off

Image menu settings

› In the main *Images* menu, tap on function surface .

- **Image view:** - Image view settings
  - **Full** - Display the maximum image size while retaining the aspect ratio
  - **Automatic** - Full screen display
- **Display time:** - Set the display time for the slideshow
- **Repeat slideshow** - Switching the slideshow repeat on/off

Telephone menu settings

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface .

- **Hands-free telephone** - Switching a call to the phone/back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select mobile phone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings » page 106

- **User profile** - User profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - Set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Mailbox number:** - Enter the mailbox phone number
  - **Sort by:** - Arrangement of telephone contact list
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
    - **1st name** - Sort by contact's first name
  - **Import contacts:** - Import telephone contacts
  - **Select ring tone** - Select the ring tone (depending on the connected phone)
  - **Reminder: Remember your mobile** - Turn on/off the warning mode before forgetting the phone in the vehicle (if the phone was connected to the device)
  - **Show pictures for contacts** - Activate/deactivate the display of the images assigned to the contacts
- **Conference call** - Activate/deactivate conference calls
- **Network** - Set the telephone service provider network of the SIM card inserted in the CarStick device (applies to Infotainment Amundsen) » page 107

SmartLink+ menu settings

› In the main *SmartLink* menu, tap on function surface ⚙ .

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Activate/deactivate data transfer for ŠKODA applications
- *MirrorLink*® - Settings of the system MirrorLink®
  - **Allow MirrorLink® notification to be shown** - Turn the display of Mirror link® application messages on the Infotainment screen on/off

Navigation menu settings

Route options

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Route options**.

- **Suggest 3 alternative routes** - Switch the menu for alternative routes on/off (economical, fast, short)
- **Route:** - Setting the preferred route
- **Most frequent routes** - Show/hide the menu of the most frequent routes in the split screen
- **Dynamic route** - Switch on/off dynamic route recalculation due to TMC traffic reports or online traffic reports
- **Avoid motorways** - Activate/deactivate the non-use of motorways in the route calculation
- **Avoid ferries and motorail trains** - Activate/deactivate the non-use of ferries and motorail trains in the route calculation
- **Avoid toll roads** - Activate/deactivate the use of toll roads for route calculation
- **Avoid tunnels** - Switch on/off use of tunnels for route calculation
- **Avoid routes requiring toll stickers** - Activate/deactivate the use of routes requiring toll stickers on/off for route calculation
  - **Show available toll stickers** - Selection of countries for which a valid toll sticker is required (routes requiring toll stickers are used for route calculation)
- **Include trailer** - Turn on / off the setting to take a trailer into account for route calculation » page 156

Map

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Map**.

- **Show road signs** - Switch the display of traffic signs on/off
- **Lane guidance** - Activate/deactivate the display of lane guidance
- **Show favourites** - Activate/deactivate the display of favourites
- **Show POIs** - Activate/deactivate the display of POIs
  - **Select categories for POIs** - Select the categories of displayed POIs
  - **Show brand logos for POIs** - Activate/deactivate the company logos available for the POIs shown
- **Traffic flow settings** - Setting for the display of a traffic obstruction received from online traffic
  - **Display free-moving traffic** - Activate/deactivate the display of routes with free-moving traffic
  - **Display congestion** - Activate/deactivate the display of routes with heavy traffic
  - **Display traffic events (symbols on map)** - Activate/deactivate the display of routes with a traffic incident

Manage memory

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Manage memory**.

- **Sort contacts:** - Setting the configuration of the phone book
  - **By surname** - Sorting by the contact surname
  - **By first name** - Sorting by the contact first name
- **Define home address** - Enter the home address
- **Delete "My POIs"** - Delete your own POI categories (Personal POI)

- **Update "My POIs" (SD/USB)** - Import/update your own POI categories (Personal POI)
- **Retrieve "My POIs" (online)** - Online import/update of your own POI categories created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website
- **Import destinations (SD/USB)** - Import destinations in vCard format
- **Delete user data** - Delete user data (by tapping function surface **Delete** and confirming the deletion)
  - **Last destinations** - Delete the last destinations
  - **Dest. memory** - Delete the stored destinations
  - **Online destinations** - Delete the stored online destinations
  - **Routes** - Delete saved routes
  - **My points of interest (Personal POI)** - Delete the custom POIs
  - **Entered cities** - Delete the history of places already entered via the address
  - **Home address** - Delete the stored home address
  - **Flagged destination** - Delete the flagged destination
  - **Most frequent routes** - Delete the most travelled routes

Navigation announcements

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Navigation announcements**.

- **Volume** - Volume control of the navigation announcements
- **Entertainment fading (Navigation)** - Adjust the fading of the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) when navigation announcements are being made
- **No navigation announcements during calls** - Activate/deactivate non-playback of navigation announcements during a telephone call
- **Note:"My POIs"** - Activate/deactivate an audible indication when approaching a custom POI (if supported by the imported custom POI)

Speed limits

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Speed limits**.

The maximum speed limits for the current country are displayed.

When the function is switched on **Note:National border crossed**» page 110, *Advanced settings*, display the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

Fuel options

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Fuel options**.

- **Select preferred fuel station** - Select your preferred fuel station brand (the selected station brand will be displayed in the first three positions of the list)
- **Fuel warning** – Activate/deactivate the display of a warning message with the option to search for the nearest petrol station when the fuel level reaches the reserve area

Version information

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Version information** .

A list of countries is displayed that exist for the navigation data, together with the date of the last update.

The navigation data can be updated by tapping on the **Update function surface (SD/USB)** or **Online update**.

The information on updating the navigation data can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA websites.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Advanced settings

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Time display:** - Select the time display in the status line
  - - Estimated arrival time at destination
  - Estimated travelling time to the destination
- **Status line:** - Selection of the destination type, for which the status line, the route and travel time are displayed (this also determines which destination type is displayed on the map after selecting → is displayed on the map)
  - - Route destination
  - - Next waypoint
- **Note:National border crossed** - Switching the display of information on country-specific speed limits when crossing a national border on/off
- **Demo mode** - Activate/deactivate guidance in demo mode
  - **Define demo mode starting point** - Specify the start point of the route guidance in demo mode by entering the address or the current vehicle position

Infotainment settings – Swing

Infotainment system settings

Sound settings

› Press the SOUND or SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Sound**.

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Maximum switch-on volume** - Setting the maximum volume when switching on Infotainment
  - **Announcements** - Adjustment of traffic announcements volume (TP)
  - **Speed-dep. vol.adjust.** - Volume increases as speed increases
  - **Entertainment fading (parking)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **Entertainment fading (Navigation)** - Reduction of audio volume (e.g. radio volume) for navigation announcements originating from the SmartLink application
  - **Bluetooth audio:** - Volume setting of the device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equalizer
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **ŠKODA Surround** - Switch surround sound on/off (cannot be used in *Radio* mode)
- **Virtual Subwoofer** -Switch virtual subwoofer on/off (cannot be used in *Radio* mode)

Display settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Screen**.

- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable/disable the automatic power off function
- **Display clock when screen is off** - Time and date display when the screen is switched off
- **Brightness:** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Time and date**.

- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Time format:** - Set the time format
- **Summer (DST)** - Switches summer time on/off
- **Automatic summer time** - Switches the automatic switch to summer time on/off
- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Set the date format

Infotainment language settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

More keypad languages settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **More keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow characters other than those in the currently selected language to be entered.

Unit settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Units**.

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Fuel consumption:** - Fuel consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tyre pressure

Setting data transfer

Activated data transfer enables data transfer between the Infotainment and an external device.

› Press the SETUP button and then tap on the function surface **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**.

Safe removal of the external data source

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Remove safely** and select the external device to be removed.

Reset to factory settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Factory settings**.

In this menu, individual settings or all settings can be restored at the same time.

Bluetooth® settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch the Bluetooth® function on/off
- **Visibility:** Switch the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for other Bluetooth® devices on/off
- **1st name** - Change the name of the Bluetooth® unit
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of paired Bluetooth ® devices
- **Find devices** - Search for available Bluetooth® devices
- **Bluetooth audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Turn on/off the ability to connect a Bluetooth® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

Settings of online services ŠKODA Connect

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **ŠKODA Connect (online services)**.

- **Services Management** - Information on licensing of the respective online services and the option to switch them on/off
- **registration** - Enter the registration PIN code for online services (in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal receive)

System information

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **System information**.

The information available will be displayed, for example regarding the Infotainment hardware and software, Bluetooth® software version, etc.

› To **Update** the Infotainment software, Bluetooth® software version, etc., tap on the function surface **Update software**.

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/infotainment

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting ranges

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ .

- **Scan** - Automatic playback of short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range
- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Arrow buttons:** - Setting the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Presets** - Change between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Stations** - Change between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches the traffic program on/off
- **Radio text** - Switches the radio text display (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Sort channel list:** - Sort types of radio stations in the station list (FM)
  - **By group** - Group sorting by transmitted program
  - **Alphabet** - Alphabetically order according to station name
- **Station logos** - Manual management of station logos
- **Delete presets** - Delete the stations stored under preset buttons
- **Advanced settings** - Other settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range (FM and DAB)

Advanced settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **RDS Regional:** Switch on/off automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
- **Automatic frequency control (AF)** - Activates/deactivates the search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played

- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - enable/disable RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)
- **Sort channel list:** - Sort types of radio stations in the station list (FM)
  - **By group** - Group sorting by transmitted program
  - **Alphabet** - Alphabetically order according to station name

Advanced settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **DAB traffic announcements** - Enable/disable DAB announcements
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch other announcements on/off (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB - DAB station tracking** - Activate/deactivate automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Automatic DAB - FM switching** - Enable/disable auto-switching from DAB to the FM frequency band if the DAB signal is lost

DAB program tracking
When a DAB transmitter is a part of several broadcast stations and if the current station group is not available on any other frequency, then when the signal is poor, the same station will be searched in another station group.

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by **(FM)** while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

Media menu settings

› In the main *Media* menu, tap function surface ⚙ .

- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Mix/repeat including subfolders** - Switching the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches the traffic program on/off
- **Remove safely:** - Safe removal of the external device

Telephone menu settings

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ .

- **Hands-free telephone** - Switching a call to the phone/back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select mobile phone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
  - **Find** - search for available Telephones
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings » page 112
- **User profile** - User profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - Set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Sort by:** - Arrangement of telephone contact list
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
    - **1st name** - Sort by contact's first name
  - **Import contacts** - Import phone contacts
  - **Select ring tone** - Select the ring tone (depending on the connected phone)
- **Reminder: Remember your mobile** - Turn on/off the warning mode before forgetting the phone in the vehicle (if the phone was connected to the device)
- **Simultaneous calls** - Enable/disable the option to hold two concurrent calls

SmartLink+ menu settings

› In the main *SmartLink* menu, tap on function surface ⚙ .

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Activate/deactivate data transfer for ŠKODA applications
- *MirrorLink*® - Settings of the system MirrorLink®
  - **Connect automatically via Bluetooth** - Activate/deactivate the option of pairing and connecting the external device via Bluetooth®
  - **Allow MirrorLink® notification to be shown** - Activate/deactivate the display of Mirror link® application messages on the Infotainment screen

Infotainment settings – Blues

Infotainment system settings

Introduction to the subject

Individual menu items for the Infotainment settings can be accessed by pressing one of the buttons below.

SOUND - Sound settings » page 114
SETUP Infotainment settings » page 114
EXTRAS Settings of the currently opened *Radio* » page 114 or *Media* menu » page 114

Sound settings

› Press the SOUND button repeatedly.

The following menu items of the settings are displayed in sequence.
- **Bass** - bass setting
- **Middle** - mid-tone setting
- **Treble** - treble setting
- **Balance** - Sets the balance between the left and right-hand sides
- **Fader** - Sets the sound focus between front/rear (applies to vehicles with rear speakers)

Infotainment settings

› Press the SETUP button repeatedly.

The following menu items are displayed in sequence.
- **GALA** - Speed-sensitive volume adjustment (higher numbers indicate a steeper increase in the volume level)
- **On volume** - Sets the maximum volume when the Infotainment is switched on
- **TP volume** - Sets the volume for in-coming traffic program alerts (TP)
- **PDC audio** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) when the parking aid is activated
  - **Low** - Low volume attenuation
  - **Middle** - Medium volume attenuation
  - **High** - High volume attenuation
- **Clock** - Time display on the Infotainment display (with the ignition on and the Infotainment off)
  - **Yes** - Switches the display on
  - **No** - Switches the display off
- **Restore** - Reset to factory settings
  - **Press** ▷ - Confirmation of the factory settings

Radio menu settings

› When the *Radio* menu is open, press button EXTRAS repeatedly.

The following menu items are displayed in sequence.
- **TP** - Sets the traffic news reception
  - **Yes** - Traffic news is being received
  - **No** - Traffic news is not being received
- **Scan** - Browse available radio stations
  - **Press** ▷ - Start the scan
- **Manual** - Manual selection of a radio station
  - **Press** ▷ - Start manual selection
- **Arrows** - Sets the station selection (function of the ◁ or ▷ button)
  - **Stations** - Select from the list of available stations
  - **Presets** - Select from the preset buttons

Media menu settings

› With the *Media* menu open, press button EXTRAS repeatedly.

The following menu items are displayed in sequence.
- **Mix** - Switch random play on/off
  - **Off** - Switch off
  - **On** - Switch on
- **Repeat** - Repeat playback
  - **All** - From the current source
  - **Track** - Track
  - **Folder** - Folder
- **TP** - Sets the traffic news reception
  - **Yes** - Traffic news is being received
  - **No** - Traffic news is not being received

Radio

Operation

Introduction to the subject

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the Infotainment type, analogue radio reception of the FM and AM frequency ranges as well as DAB digital radio reception is possible.

CAUTION

- For vehicles with window antennas, do not stick foil or metal coated stickers to the window - radio signal reception could be affected.
- Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can interfere with the radio signal. even causing it to fail completely.

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

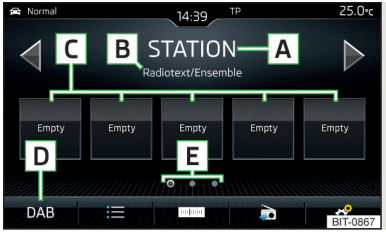


Fig. 140
Radio: Main menu (DAB)

› To **display** the main menu, press button RADIO.
› **or**: Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 140

A The selected radio station (name or frequency)
B Radio text (FM) / Description of the group (DAB)
C Preset buttons for favourite stations
D Choice of radio broadcasting range (FM / AM / DAB)
E Choice of storage group for the preferred station
◁ ▷ Change the station
List of available stations
Manual / semi-automatic station search
Radio text display (DAB) / picture presentation (DAB)
Settings of menu *Radio* » page 107 or » page 112

Information symbol in the status line

Symbol	Meaning
TP	Traffic signal is available
no TP	Traffic signal is not available
	Signal is not available (DAB)

If the displayed station name continuously changes (dynamic text), then it is possible to fix the current text by holding your finger on the device screen in the station name area. By holding your finger in the area of the station name again, the station name is displayed in its entirety again.

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

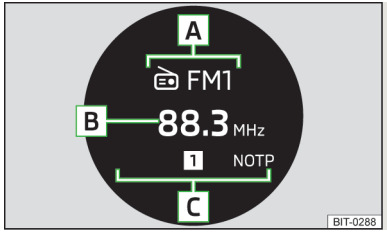


Fig. 141
Display

Description of the display » Fig. 141

A The selected broadcasting range
B The selected radio station (frequency or identifier)
C Status bar

Symbols in the status bar C

Symbol	Meaning
MANUAL	Browse radio frequency range manually
SCAN	Browse radio frequency range automatically
1 - 6	Number of a position (station button) under which the radio station is stored

Symbol	Meaning
🔇	Sound off
TP	A traffic information station is available
NOTP	No traffic information station is available

Choose broadcasting range
Each broadcasting area has two storage groups - **FM1** and **FM2** or **AM1** and **AM2**.

▶ Press the RADIO button repeatedly.

Searching for stations and selecting the frequency

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Searching for stations
› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface ◁ or ▷ .

Depending on the setting → **Arrow buttons:** will set an available station from the **Stations list** or a station of the current broadcast range on the **Station buttons**.

Selecting the frequency
› To **display the value** of the currently chosen frequency, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap the function surface .
› To **set the desired frequency value** use the slider or the function surfaces ◁ ▷ in the bottom area of the screen, if necessary, turn the controller .

Scanning through the stations one after the other (scan)
The function scans through all the available stations in the current frequency range in succession, for a few seconds each.

› To **start** automatic scanning of the available stations, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap on the function surface → Tap on → **Scan** .
› To **end** automatic scanning, tap the function surface SCAN .

Searching for stations and selecting the frequency

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

Searching for stations
The Infotainment will automatically search for available radio stations in the background, which can be selected immediately after the Infotainment is switched on.

› Press button ◁ or ▷.

You will switch to the previous or next station.

Semi-automatic station search
› Press and hold button ◁ or ▷.

A search commences in the selected direction and stops at the next station with sufficient signal strength.

Selecting the frequency
› Press button EXTRAS → **Manual.**
› Press button ◁ or ▷ repeatedly and set the desired value for the frequency range.

The value of the frequency range changes by 0.1 MHz on the FM band and 9 kHz in the AM band.

Scanning through the stations one after the other (scan)
› Press button EXTRAS → **Scan** → ▷.

The search starts.

This function plays all the available stations in succession for a few seconds each.

Pressing the ▷ button again ends the search and the current station remains set.

Selecting a station from the preset list
By pressing the respective button 1 - 6, it changes to the station stored under the given position in the current storage group (e.g. FM1).

List of available stations

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

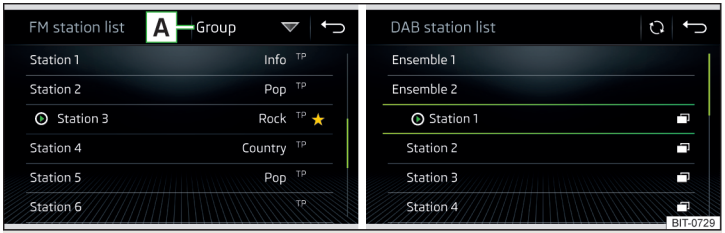


Fig. 142 **Example, the list of available FM/DAB stations**

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting area, tap the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ☰.
› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.
› To **sort** (FM) the stations in alphabetical order, by group or genre, tap on the function surface A » Fig. 142 » ⚠.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting area, tap the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ☰.
› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.
› To **filter** the stations based on the program type (e.g. Music, Sport etc.) in the FM station list (with activated RDS function) and the DAB station list (with alphabetical sorting of the channel list selected), tap the function surface A » Fig. 142.

Information symbols

Symbol	Meaning
★	Radio station, which is stored on a preset button
▶	Currently played station
TP	Traffic information station
(e.g.) Pop	Type of program being broadcast (FM)
(e.g.) R2	Type of regional broadcast (FM)
	Signal reception is not available (DAB)
	The transmitter reception is not secure (DAB) (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing)
	Stations with image broadcasting (DAB) (does not apply to infotainment Swing)

Refresh list

The station list is updated automatically in the **FM** radio range.

In the **AM** and **DAB**radio area, the update takes place manually by pressing the function surface ↻ » Fig. 142.

⚠ CAUTION

To sort the stations according to genre, the RDS and AF functions must be switched on. These functions can be switched on/off in the main *Radio* menu in the FM band by tapping the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

Preset buttons for your favourite stations

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

In every broadcasting range, there are station buttons available to store preferred stations C That are split into groups E » Fig. 140 *on page 115* or .

› To **save the station currectly being listen to on the main menu** *Radio*, hold down the desired function surface C until an acoustic signal sounds.
› To **save a station in the list of available stations**, keep the function surface of the desired station held down, select the memory group, and then tap the desired station button.

Presets for preferred stations

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

Storing manually

› Select a preset group (e.g. **FM1**).
› Press and hold one of the preset buttons 1 - 6.

The station is stored in the selected position.

Storage is confirmed by an acoustic signal and by the display of the station button number in the status line of the display.

Automatic storage

› Press and hold button RADIO.

In the Infotainment display, the following text appears **AutoStore ...** and in the current storage group (e.g. FM1), six radio stations are stored with the strongest signal.

Station logos - Amundsen

In the Infotainment memory, you can store station logos, which are assigned automatically by the device when stations are stored under preset buttons.

Assigning a station logo automatically

› To **deactivate/activate**, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap the function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Autostore station logos** .

Assigning a station logo manually

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Removing a station logo manually

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you wish to remove a logo.

Note

- The following image formats are supported: jpg, gif, png, bmp.
- We recommend a resolution of up to 500x500 pixels.

Station logos - Swing

The station button for a preferred station can contain the name and the station logo.

Assigning a station logo

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Removing a station logo

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you wish to remove a logo.
› **or**: Tap the function surface **All areas** to delete the logos of all station buttons at the same time.
› Confirm/cancel the removal.

Note

- The following image formats are supported: jpg, png.
- We recommend a resolution of up to 400x240 pixels.

TP Traffic program

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing

› To **activate/deactivate** traffic monitoring, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap on function surface → **Traffic programme (TP)**.

Applies to Infotainment Blues

› To **activate/deactivate** traffic monitoring, go to the *Radio* menu and press button EXTRAS ➠ **TP** ➠ **Yes/No**.

During a traffic announcement, it is possible to cancel the current announcement or to deactivate traffic monitoring.

Note

- If the station that is currently set does not transmit traffic reports or the signal is not available, then Infotainment automatically searches in the background for another TP station.
- During playback in the *Media* menu or a station in the AM radio range, traffic news is received from the previously selected FM radio range.

Media

Operation

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

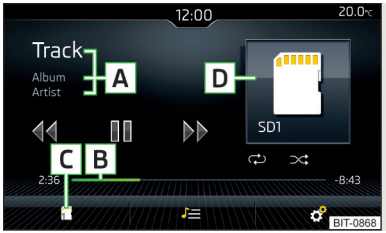


Fig. 143
Media: Main menu

› To **display** the main menu, press button MEDIA.
› **or**: Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ♫.

Main menu » Fig. 143

A Information on playing track
B Playback timeline with a slider
C Select the audio source (the SD2 source is not available)
D Selected audio source / album image / album overview
♪≡ Depending on the audio source type:
- ▶ Folder/track list
- ▶ Multimedia Database

⚙ Settings of menu *Media* » page 108 or » page 113

Note

▪ Information concerning the track being played appears on the screen, if it is stored as a so-called ID3 Tag on the audio source. If no ID3 tag is available, only the track name is displayed.
▪ The remaining playback time indicated does not correspond to the actual remaining playback time for tracks with variable bit rates (VBR).

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

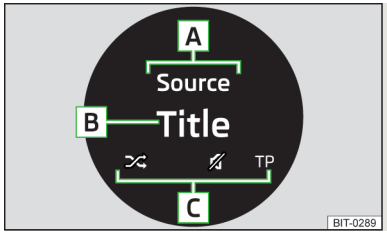


Fig. 144
Display

› To **display** the main menu, press button MEDIA.

Description of the display » Fig. 144

A Information line
B Name of the track being played
C Status bar

Select audio source

▶ Press the MEDIA button again.

The Infotainment only switches between connected audio sources with playable content.

The Infotainment can detect a maximum of 1024 directories in the connected audio sources and can play back a maximum of 6500 files. The Infotainment can play a max 1024 files from a directory.

Adjusting

▶ With the *Media* menu open, press button EXTRAS » page 114.

Symbols in the information line A

Symbols in the status bar C

Playback control - Amundsen

Function	Action
Play/Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right in screen area A » Fig. 143 *on page 119* after 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Fast-rewind within the track	Hold ◁◁
Fast-forward within the track	Hold ▷▷
Play the previous track	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right of the screen area A » Fig. 143 *on page 119* within 3 s after the start of the track playback
Play back the next title	Tap ▷▷
	Moving your finger to the left of the screen area A » Fig. 143 *on page 119*
Switch on/off the random playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⤮
Switch on/off the repeat playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⟲
Switch on/off repeat playback of specific track	Tap ⟲

Movement within the track is possible by touching your finger on the timeline B » Fig. 143 *on page 119*.

Playback control - Swing

Function	Action
Play/Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Play the previous track	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
Fast-reverse within the title	Press and hold ◁◁
Fast-forward within the title	Press and hold ▷▷
Play back the next title	Tap ▷▷
Switch on/off the random playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⤮
Switch on/off the repeat playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⟲
Switch on/off repeat playback of specific track	Tap ⟲

Movement within the track is possible by touching your finger on the timeline B » Fig. 143 *on page 119*.

Playback control - Blues

Function	Action
Play/Pause	Press ⏯
Fast-forward within the title	Press and hold ▷
Fast-reverse within the title	Press and hold ◁
Plays the current track from the start	Press ◁ (3 seconds after the start of the title playback)
Play the previous track	Press ◁ (within 3 seconds after the start of the track playback)
Play the next track	Press ▷
Change to/to previous folder/play-list of the current audio source[a)]	Press 1
Change to/to next folder/play-list of the current audio source[a)]	Press 3

a) The function is not supported by Apple devices.

Folder/track list

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

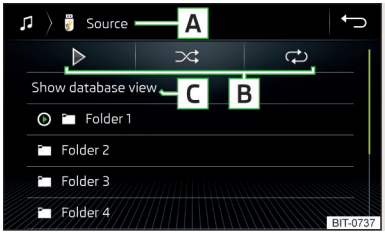


Fig. 145
Folder/track list

› To **display** the folder/track list in the *Media* main menu, tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).
› To **playback**, select a track.

Folder/track list » Fig. 145

A Selected audio source/audio source folder (move within the folder by tapping the function surface for the folder)
B Folder/track playback options
C Display of multimedia database (only available in the source directory) (not applicable to the Infotainment Swing)
♪ Audio source selection
Folder
Playlist
▶ / ⏸ Track currently being played/track playback stopped
♪ The title cannot be played (tapping on the function surface shows the cause).

Note

▪ In the list, the first 1000 entries (tracks, directories etc.) with the oldest creation date are displayed.
▪ The scanning speed of the folder/track list depends on the connection speed and volume of data.

Multimedia database

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

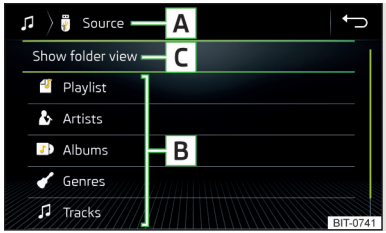


Fig. 146
Multimedia database

› To **display** the multimedia database, go to the main *Media* menu and tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).

The audio files are sorted by their properties into individual categories B.

› To **playback**, select the category and then the track.

Multimedia Database » Fig. 146

A Selected audio source/Selected category/Folder of the audio source
B Sorting categories
C Display of folder/track list (only available in the source directory)
♪ Audio source selection

Audio sources

Introduction to the subject

CAUTION

- Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an external audio source, the external source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed (e.g. enabling data transfer etc).

Note

The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

SD card

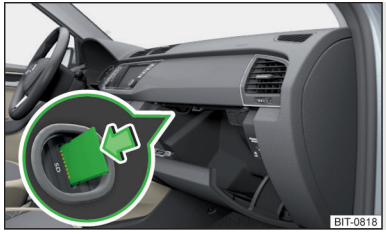


Fig. 147
Amundsen: Insert the SD card



Fig. 148 **Swing/Blues: Insert the SD card**

Pushing in

› **Insert** the SD card in the slot in the direction of arrow (with the cut end facing right), until it “locks” » Fig. 147 or » Fig. 148.

Removing

› Before **removing** the SD card, go to the main *Media* menu and tap function surface → **Remove safely**.
› Push down on the inserted SD memory card. The SD card “jumps” into the eject position.

CAUTION

- Do not use an SD card with a broken write protection “slide” - there is a risk of damage to the SD card reader!
- When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB input

Installation location of the USB input and information regarding its use » page 74.

At the USB input, an audio source can be connected directly or via a connecting cable.

› To **connect**, insert the USB audio source into the appropriate input.
› To **disconnect** the USB, go to the main *Media* menu and tap on the function surface → **Remove safely**.
› Disconnect the audio source from the corresponding USB input.

Charging a USB audio source
With the ignition, the charging process starts automatically after the USB audio source is connected (applies to audio sources where charging via the USB connector is possible).

The charging efficiency can differ compared to charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected external device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not recognise that they are being charged.

CAUTION
USB extension cables or reducers may impair the function of the connected audio source.

Note
We recommend that you use extension cables from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Bluetooth® player

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

The Infotainment system allows you to play back audio files from a connected Bluetooth® player using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With the Infotainment system, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth®, but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

Connecting/disconnecting
› To **connect** the Bluetooth® player to the Infotainment system, follow the same instructions as for pairing the Infotainment system with a telephone » page 131.
› To **disconnect** the Bluetooth® player, end the connection in the list of paired external devices » page 131.

Replacing the Bluetooth® player (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
To replace a Bluetooth® player, which is also connected to the Infotainment system as a telephone, a corresponding information message will be displayed on the Infotainment screen.

› End the connection to the currently connected Bluetooth® player and repeat the pairing procedure » page 131, *Managing paired external devices*.

CAUTION
If an external device is connected to the Infotainment system using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

WLAN

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The Infotainment system allows you to play audio files from one of the external devices connected to the Infotainment WLAN.

› Connect an external device that supports the DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance), with Infotainment WLAN» page 137.
› If necessary, start the UPnP application (Universal Plug and Play) in the connected device, which allows playback.
› Select the audio source **WLAN** .

Supported audio sources and file formats - Amundsen

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); USB devices that support MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	
Bluetooth® - Player	-	-	Bluetooth logs A2DP and AVRCP (1.0-1.5)	-

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	m3u pls wpl m3u8 asx
WAV	wav	Defined by the format (approx. 1.5 Mbit/s)		
MPEG-1; 2 and 2,5 layer 3	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	
MPEG-2 and 4	aac; mp4; m4a			
FLAC; Vorbis	flac; ogg	Defined by the format (approx. 5.5 Mbit/s)		

Audio sources sub-divided into areas using the GPT standards (GUID partition table) are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported audio sources and file formats – Swing

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); USB devices that support MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	
Bluetooth® - Player	-	-	Bluetooth logs A2DP and AVRCP (1.0-1.5)	-

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	m3u pls wpl asx
MPEG-1; 2 and 2,5 (Layer-3)	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	

Audio sources sub-divided into areas using the GPT standards (GUID partition table) are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported audio sources and file formats – Blues

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD; SDHC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); USB devices that support MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	m3u pls wpl asx
MPEG-1; 2 and 2,5 (Layer-3)	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	

Audio sources sub-divided into areas using the GPT standards (GUID partition table) are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Images

Image viewer

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.



Fig. 149
Images: Main menu

› To **display** the main menu, press MENU, then tap the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 149

A Select the image source
/ Folder/image list
Display the previous image
Switch on the slideshow
Switch off the slideshow
Display the next image
Menu settings for *Images* » page 108
Rotate the image 90° anticlockwise
Rotate the image 90° clockwise
Display the original image size while retaining the aspect ratio
Guidance to GPS coordinates (the display only occurs if the image contains GPS coordinates) (applies to Infotainment Amundsen) » page 152

Controlling viewed images

Function	Action
Display the next image	Finger movement across the screen to the left (with initial representation)
	Tap ▷▷
Display the previous image	Finger movement across the screen to the right (with initial representation)
	Tap ◁◁
Increase the image size	Touch the screen with two fingers and pull apart
	Turn the knob ⊙ to the right
Reduce the image size	Touch the screen with two fingers and close together
	Turn the knob ⊙ to the left
Move the image with an enlarged display	Drag your finger over the screen in the required direction
Rotate by 90 °	Touch the screen with two fingers and move clockwise or anti-clockwise (only available with initial representation)
	Tap ↷ or ↶
Maximum magnification of display	Double tap on the screen
Display the original image size while retaining the aspect ratio	Double tap on the screen again
	Press the knob ⊙

CAUTION

Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Supported image file formats and sources

Supported image sources

Source	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB stick; HDD (without special software)	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	

Supported file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. resolution (Megapixels)
BMP	bmp	4
JP(E)G	jpg; jpeg	4; 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

Note

- The max. supported image size is 20 MB.
- The images sources structured into areas in accordance with the GPT standards (GUID partition table) are not supported by Infotainment.

Media Command

Using the system

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

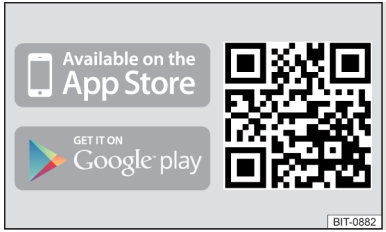


Fig. 150
ŠKODA Media Command application

The Media Command function allows you to control the playback of audio files or videos in up to two **tablets** that are connected to the Infotainment system via WLAN **in the Infotainment system**.

The Media Command function enables operation of tablets with the Android or iOS operating system.

The prerequisitefor the Media Command function is enabled data transfer, the application installed in the tablet "ŠKODA Media Command" as well as Infotainment control approved using the application » page 101.

"ŠKODA Media Command" application
The ŠKODA app is available in the App Store and Google Play online shops.

After entering the following address into the web browser, the website is opened with information on the ŠKODA mobile applications.

http://go.skoda.eu/service-app

"ŠKODA Media Command" application
› Scan the QR code » Fig. 150 .

Connecting a tablet to the Infotainment system
› Switch on the Infotainment hotspot (press button MENU and then tap function surface → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**).
› Turn on WLAN in the tablet.

› Establish a WLAN connection in the tablet » page 137, *Connecting via WLAN*.
› In the tablet, start the “ŠKODA Media Command” application.

CAUTION

■ If several devices are connected to the Infotainment system by means of WLAN, there is the danger of WLAN overloading and thus also the inability of Media Command to function properly.
■ High-definition video playback (e.g. HD) may cause playback problems or problems connecting the tablets to the Infotainment system.

Main menu

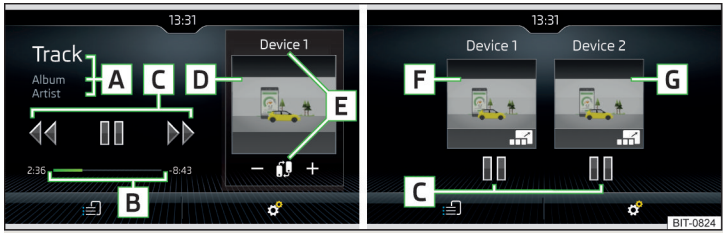


Fig. 151 **One tablet / two tablets**

› To **display** the main *Media Command* menu, press the MENU button, then tap the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 151

A Information on the track being played
B Playback timeline with a slider
C Playback control
D Image from the video being played back
E Name of the tablet used/Switch to main menu of two tablets (when icon displayed)
– / + Increase/decrease the tablet volume
F Display of main menu and operation of first tablet (symbol)
G Display of main menu and operation of second tablet (symbol)
Playback source selection
Wi-fi settings » page 106

Selecting the source and controlling playback

› To **select the playback source**, go to the main menu and tap the function surface and select the source tablet.
› To **playback**, select the category and then the track.

If two tablets are connected, track playback starts in the two tablets at the same time.

Playback can be controlled via the Infotainment system or on each tablet, independently of each other. This means there is an option to play back different tracks on the tablets at the same time.

Playback control

Function	Action
Play/Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
Play the previous track	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Play the next track	Tap ▷▷

Movement within the track is possible by touching your finger on the timeline B » Fig. 151 *on page 128*.

Note

Some tablet types allow playback of audio files or videos from an SD card inserted in the tablet. Playback of these tracks may be limited.

Supported file formats

Type	Format	Operating system Android	Operating system iOS
Video	MPEG-4 Part 2	✓	✓
	MPEG-4 Part 10 (H264)	✓	✓
	XVID	✓	✕

Type	Format	Operating system Android	Operating system iOS
Audio	MPEG-1;2 and 2.5 Layer 3 (mp3)	✓	✓
	AAC	✓ (4.1)	✓
	M4A	✓ (4.1)	✓
	OGG	✓	×
	FLAC	✓	×
	WAV	✓ (4.1)	✓

Telephone

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

WARNING

The general binding country-specific regulations for operating mobile telephones in the vehicle must be observed.

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

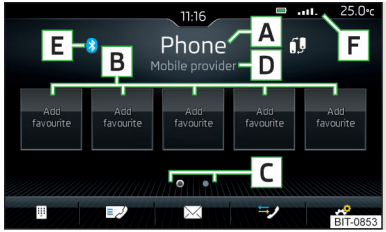


Fig. 152
Telephone: Main menu

The *Telephone* main menu appears when a telephone is connected to the Infotainment system.

› To **display**, press the PHONE button.
› **or**: Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 152

A Name of the main telephone
B Preset station buttons for favourite contacts
C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts
D Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)
E Symbol of the main telephone (tap to display the list of paired telephones)
Swap the main telephone and the additional telephone
Enter the telephone number

List of contacts
Menu with text messages (SMS)
Call list
Menu settings for *Telephone* » page 108

Symbols in the status bar

F Signal strength of the telephone service network
Charge status of the telephone battery
Missed call
Current call
Incoming SMS
PIN PIN code of the SIM card was not entered

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

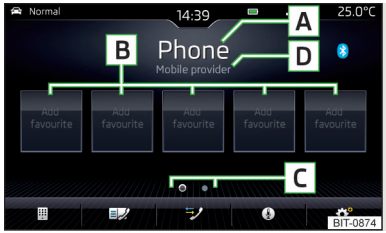


Fig. 153
Telephone: Main menu

The *Telephone* main menu appears when a telephone is connected to the Infotainment system.

› To **display**, press the PHONE button.

To display the *Telephone* main menu if a different menu is displayed, which was open last, press the PHONE button again.

Main menu » Fig. 153

A Name of the main telephone (tap to display the list of paired telephones)
B Preset station buttons for favourite contacts
C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts
D Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)

Enter the telephone number
List of contacts » page 132
Call list (missed calls, in addition to the function surface, the number of calls when missed is displayed)
Starting voice control of the connected phone (e.g. Apple Siri, Google Voice)
Menu settings for *Telephone* » page 113

Symbols in the status bar

Signal strength of the telephone service network
Charge status of the telephone battery
Missed call
Current call

Pairing and connecting

Introduction to the subject

To connect a telephone to the Infotainment system, the two devices must be paired via Bluetooth®.

Depending on the Infotainment model, up to 20 external devices can be paired with the device. After the maximum number is reached, the pairing of the next external device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

Connection to an already paired telephone is established automatically after the ignition is switched on. Or, it is sufficient to search for the phone in the list of paired devices.

The range of the telephone connection to the Infotainment system is limited to the passenger compartment.

Compatibility and update

By reading the QR code » Fig. 125 *on page 95* **or** after typing the following address into the web browser, information about the compatibility of phones and updates are available for Infotainment Bluetooth ®can be displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

Conditions for pairing

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment system and the telephone is switched on.
✓ The visibility of the Infotainment system and the telephone is switched on.
✓ The telephone is within range of the Infotainment system's Bluetooth® signal.
✓ The telephone is compatible with the Infotainment system.
✓ No external device is connected to the Infotainment system using Apple CarPlay.

Pairing and connection process

Pairing the telephone with the Infotainment system

› Find available external Bluetooth® devices in your telephone.
› Select the name of the Infotainment system.

The name of the Infotainment system can be checked in the *Telephone* main menu if you tap on the function surface → **Bluetooth** in the **Name:** menu item.

› Confirm the PIN code (enter and confirm if necessary).

The telephone is connected to the Infotainment or just paired, depending on the number of external devices that are already connected » page 131.

Pairing the Infotainment system with the telephone

› If **no** telephone is connected to the Infotainment system, press the PHONE button, then tap the **Find telephone** function surface or press the MENU button, then tap function surface → **Find mobile phone**.
› If **one** telephone is connected to the infotainment system, then, in the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the → **Find telephone** function surface.
› Select the desired telephone from the list of retrieved external Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN code (enter and confirm if necessary).

! WARNING

Do not pair and connect a telephone to the Infotainment system while driving the vehicle - there is risk of an accident!

Possible connection types

Depending on the number of connected Bluetooth® devices and the connection type, the following functions are available.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

First device (main telephone)	Second device (additional telephone)
HFP (incoming/outgoing calls), SMS, telephone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a)]	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a)]

a) Only one external device can be connected to the Infotainment system as a Bluetooth® player.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

First device (main telephone)	Second device (additional telephone)
HFP (incoming/outgoing calls), telephone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a)]	Bluetooth® player[a)]

a) Only one external device can be connected to the Infotainment system as a Bluetooth® player.

Managing paired external devices

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface → **Bluetooth** → **Paired devices**.

In the list of paired external devices, the following symbols may appear for the individual external devices.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

Symbol	Symbol colour	Function
	Grey	External device can be connected as a telephone
	Green	External device is connected as a telephone
	Grey	External device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player
	White	External device is connected as a Bluetooth® player

Applies to Infotainment Swing

Symbol	Symbol colour	Function
	White	External device can be connected as a telephone
	Green	External device is connected as a telephone
	White	External device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player
	Green	External device is connected as a Bluetooth® player

Connection set-up

▶ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▶ Select the desired profile from the list of available Bluetooth® profiles.

If external Bluetooth® devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, then the Infotainment system will display messages and options for the possible connection type (e.g. replacement of the connected external Bluetooth® device) during the connection process.

Disconnection

▶ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▶ Select the desired profile from the list of available Bluetooth® profiles.

Deleting the paired external device

▶ To delete, tap on one of the following function surfaces.

Delete all or **All areas** - Delete all external devices
- Delete the desired external device

▶ Confirm the deletion by tapping on the function surface **Delete**.

Telephone functions

Enter telephone number and select

Entering a telephone number and dialling

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface .

Function surfaces of the numeric keypad

Enter the last dialled number/dial the telephone number entered
SOS / SOS Emergency call (only applies to some countries)
Breakdown call in case of breakdown
Information call (for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand)
Choose the mailbox number (the function is not supported for Infotainment Swing)
Delete the last number entered
∧ / ∨ Display the function surfaces < > for the movement of the cursor in the input line

Searching for a contact using the numeric keypad

The numeric keypad can also be used to search for a contact.

For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numeric keypad.

Voicemail box (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)

▶ To select the voice mailbox number, tap the function surface .

If the voicemail number was not imported or entered, then this can be entered or changed as follows.

▶ In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface → **User profile** → **Mailbox number:**.
▶ Enter the number of your voice mailbox.

List of telephone contacts

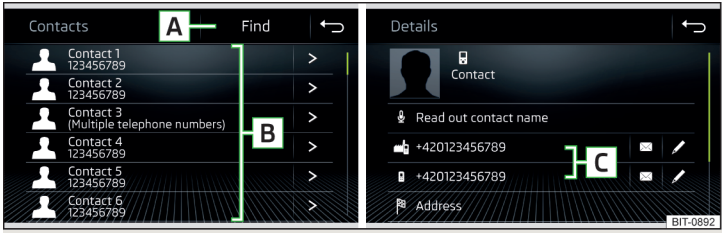


Fig. 154 **List of telephone contacts / contact details**

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface and a list of telephone contacts will be displayed » Fig. 154.

If the main telephone is connected to the Infotainment system, the telephone contacts from the telephone are used.

Function surfaces

A Contact search

B Dial a number in the telephone contact list (if a telephone contact contains several telephone numbers, a menu containing the telephone numbers assigned to this contact is displayed after the contact is selected)

> Display the contact details

C Select the telephone number in the contact details

Edit the telephone number of the contact before dialling

Infotainment Amundsen:

The contact name can be read out by the Infotainment system's generated voice

Open the menu for sending a text message (SMS)

Infotainment Amundsen:

Start the route guidance to the contact address

Import list

After the main telephone is connected to the Infotainment system for the first time, the process for importing the telephone contacts into the device memory starts. The import can take several minutes.

The Infotainment system's telephone book contains 2000 free memory locations for imported telephone contacts. Each contact can contain up to 5 telephone numbers.

The number of imported contacts can be determined in the menu item → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** or **Import contacts**.

If an error occurs during the import, a corresponding message appears on the screen.

Refresh list

When the telephone reconnects with the Infotainment system, the list is automatically updated.

The list can be refreshed manually as follows.

▶ In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** or **Import contacts**.

Management of preferred contacts (favourites)



Fig. 155
Favourite contacts

Assigning favourites

› In the main menu *Telephone*, **tap on** the desired function surface A » Fig. 155.
› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Connecting to a favourite

The function surfaces for preferred contacts allow you to dial the contact telephone numbers immediately.

The favourites are provided in two storage groups.

› To the **change Storage Group** tap on the functional surface B » Fig. 155.
› To **choose** tap on the assigned function area A » Fig. 155.

Changing allocated favourites

› In the main *Telephone* menu, **press and hold** the desired function surface A » Fig. 155.
› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Deleting a favourite

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface → **User profile** → **Manage favourites**.
› Tap the desired function surface of the preferred contact and confirm the deletion.

You can delete all contacts by tapping on the function surface **Delete all / All areas** and confirming the delete process.

Function surface for emergency call SOS

If the vehicle is not equipped with the buttons for the Care Connect service » page 16, the position of the last function surface in the first group of favourites will show the function surface for an emergency call SOS is displayed in the status bar. In some countries, this function may not be available.

The function surface can be assigned a different number for the preferred contact.

To restore the emergency number, it is necessary to remove the telephone from the list of paired external devices » page 131 and then to pair and connect again.

Call list

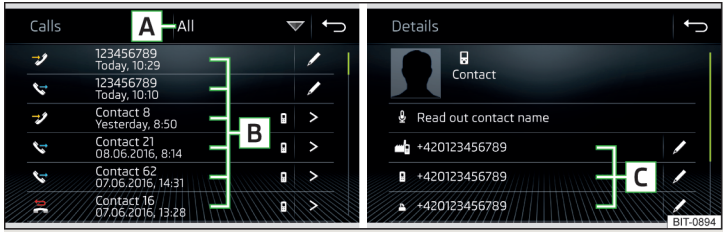


Fig. 156 **Call history / Contact details**

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface and a call list will be displayed » Fig. 156.

The call list can also be displayed during a telephone call.

Function surfaces

A Set the display depending on the type of call
- **All areas** - List of all calls
- **Missed calls/Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Dialled numbers** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received calls / Received** - List of received calls

B Dial the contact number/telephone number

Call type symbols
- - Answered call
- - Outgoing call
- - Missed call

Edit the telephone number before dialling (not applicable to Infotainment Swing)

> Display the contact details » Fig. 156
- C - Dial the contact number

Telephone call

Depending on the conversation context, the following functions can be carried out.

- End dialling/reject incoming call/end call
- Accept an incoming call/return to a held call
- / Switch ring tone on/off
- Keep talking
- / Switch microphone on/off

Infotainment Amundsen:

- Set up a conference call
- Show caller details (if the contact is stored in the list)

Switch hands-free on/off (call to the telephone/switch to Infotainment)

▶ To deactivate the hands-free system, go to the main *Telephone* menu and tap on the function surface Tap on **hands-free**during a call.

▶ To activate the hands-free system, tap on the function surface during a call.

Conference call

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The conference call is a shared call with between three and six participants.

Start a conference call/invite additional participants

› Make the next call during a call/conference call.

› **or:** Take the new incoming call by tapping the function surface .

› To **initiate a conference call** or **return to a conference call**, tap on the function surface .

Ongoing conference call

During an ongoing conference call, the call duration is displayed on the screen. Depending on the context, the following functions can be selected.

- Hold a conference call - Leave the conference call temporarily (the conference call continues in your absence)
- Return to the held conference call
- / Switch microphone on/off

End conference call

Display conference call details

Conference call details

▶ During the ongoing conference call, tap the function surface .

A list of other conference participants is displayed. The following functions can be selected depending on the type of telephone.

Display participant details

Talk to a participant separately, outside of the conference call

End the call to a conference call participant

Text messages (SMS)

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

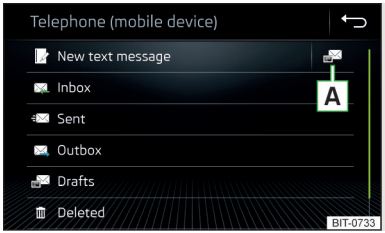


Fig. 157
Text messages main menu

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface ✉ The main menu for text messages appears » Fig. 157.

Depending on the type of telephone connected, you can perform the following functions.

A Open a list of templates for quick answers

New text message - Create and send the message

Inbox- Open a list of received messages

Sent - Open a list of sent messages

Outbox - Open a list of messages not sent

Drafts- Open a list of drafts (messages in progress)

Deleted- Open a list of deleted messages

New text message

Creating and sending the message

› In the main menu of the text messages, tap on function surface inter-face» Fig. 157 *on page 135*.

› Write a text message and confirm. A view of the text message is displayed.

› Tap the function surface ✉ / .

› Select the recipient of the message from the displayed contact list or tap the function surface and enter the telephone number.

› To add additional recipients, tap the function surface / .

› To send the text message, tap the function surface ✉ .

Viewing the text message

After opening the view message function, the following functions can be executed.

The text can be read out by the device's generated voice

The text can be stored as a draft

Open a list of templates with the option to replace the recorded text with the selected template

✉ / Open the contact list

The message can be edited, provided the text area is within the view.

Contact list

After the list has been opened the following functions can be executed.

Add a contact to the recipient list

Enter the telephone number

Return to message view

Tap on the **Find** function surface to open a list of available telephone contacts.

After selecting the contact number or entering the telephone number, the recipient list will be displayed in the screen.

Recipient list

The following functions can be executed by tapping on one of the function surfaces.

/ Display the contact list with the option of adding/removing additional recipients (to return to the recipient list, tap the function surface ⮌ .

Remove a contact from the recipient list

Send the message

Return to message view

Received text message

When you receive a new message, the number of new messages received is displayed within the function surface and at the same time the icon in the status bar is displayed in the status bar.

› To **open a list of received messages**, go to the *Telephone* main menu and tap on function surface → .

› Select a message.

The message content and the following menu is displayed.

The text can be read out by the device's generated voice

... Display a menu with additional options
- **Reply with template** - Reply using a template
- **Display numbers** - Recognition of telephone numbers in the message including the contact number (recognised numbers can be dialled directly or edited before dialling, or may be sent to this message)

Forward a message with the option to edit the message before sending

Reply to the sender via a message

Data connection

Internet connection

Connecting Infotainment Amundsen

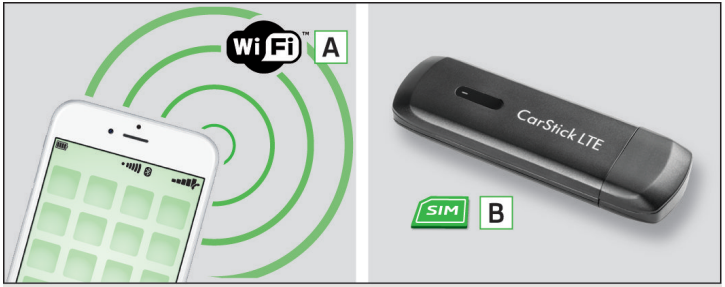


Fig. 158 **WLAN (Wi-Fi) / CarStick**

Possible connection types » Fig. 158

A Using WLAN, by connecting the Infotainment system to the hot spot of the external device » page 137, *Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device.*

B Using the **CarStick** USB device » page 136.

Connecting via the CarStick device

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The **CarStick** USB device can be purchased from the original accessories.

› Insert a SIM card with activated data services into the **CarStick** device.

The required dimensions of the SIM card, as well as the correct procedure during insertion can be found in the instructions enclosed with the CarStick ŠKODA original accessory.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.

› Insert the CarStick into the USB input at the front » Fig. 80 *on page 74*,

› Wait approximately one minute until the red light on Carstick stays continuously lit (if the red lights up, then disconnect and re-insert the Carstick).

› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code by tapping **OK** confirm.
› **or:** Tap the functional surface to save and confirm the PIN code.
› If necessary, set the required network of the data service provider.

If your data provider is not available in the list, ask your provider whether one of the displayed providers can be used.

The parameters of the telephone service provider network can be set in the menu item MENU → → **Network** → **Network settings**.

CAUTION

If you insert a SIM card of the wrong size or in the wrong direction, there is a risk of damage to the CarStick device.

Connecting via WLAN

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

WLAN can be used to connect to the Internet, to playback audio files in the menu *media* or for operating the Infotainment system using an application in the external device (e.g. "ŠKODA Media Command").

It is possible to connect up to 8 external devices to the Infotainment hotspot **and at the same time** to connect Infotainment to another hotspot.

Switching the Infotainment hotspot on/off

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch the hotspot on/off in menu item MENU → → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**.

Setting the Infotainment hotspot

The Infotainment hotspot is factory set.

The setting can be changed in menu item MENU → → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Hotspot (WLAN) settings**.

- **Security level:** - Type of access protection (always set to WPA2)
- **Network key** - Access password
- **SSID: ...** - Hotspot name
- **Do not send network name (SSID)** - Switch the visibility of the hotspot on/off

▶ To save the configured parameters, tap the **Store** function surface.

Connecting an external device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on WLAN in the external device and search for the infotainment hotspot.
› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.
› Confirm the connection.

Note

The name of the infotainment hotspot (SSID) and the access password can be found in menu item MENU → → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Hotspot (WLAN) settings**.

Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device

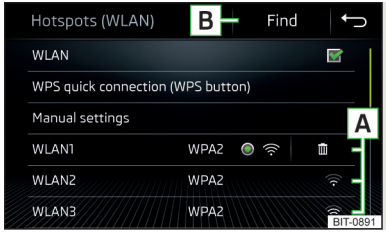


Fig. 159
Main menu of the Infotainment WLAN

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

› Switch on the ignition.
› If the Infotainment WLAN is not activated, activate it in the menu item MENU → → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **WLAN**.

In area A » Fig. 159, a list of available or previously connected hotspots is displayed.

The hotspot list can be updated by tapping the function surface B.

› Select the hotspot and enter the password.

If the hotspot is not visible, you can establish the connection to it manually. ▶

› Tap the function surface **Manual settings**.
› Set the required hotspot parameters.
› Tap on the function surface **Connect**.

Icons and function surfaces in the list of available hotspots A » Fig. 159

Connected hotspot
Signal strength of the connected hotspot
Delete the hotspot

Hotspot connection recommendations

▶ Only leave the hotspot to be connected switched on, switch off the other hotspot.
▶ On some hotspots, the connection setup takes longer, wait for the end of the connection setup.
▶ If the connection is interrupted, search for available hotspots again and repeat connection setup.
▶ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required for connection setup.

Connect via WPS

It is not necessary to enter the access password when connecting via WPS.

Connecting the Infotainment system to the hotspot of the external device

› Switch on the ignition.
› In the external device, switch on the hotspot, its visibility, and the WPS connection option.
› In the Infotainment system, switch on WLAN in menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **WLAN**.
› Tap the function surface **WPS fast connection (WPS button)**.

Connecting the external device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Infotainment hotspot in menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**.
› Tap the function surface **WPS fast connection (WPS button)**.
› In the external device, switch on the WPS connection option.

SmartLink+

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing.



Fig. 160
Information on SmartLink on the ŠKODA websites

SmartLink offers the option of displaying and operating certified applications on an external device connected via USB on the Infotainment screen.

SmartLink supports the following communication systems.

▶ "Android Auto"
▶ "Apple CarPlay"
▶ "MirrorLink®"

Using the applications in the connected external device, you can use navigation, make a call and listen to music.

For safety reasons, the operation of some applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Scan the QR code » Fig. 160 **or** enter the following address in your web browser to open the website with information on the SmartLink system.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity-smartlink

Depending on the model of the connected external device, some applications can be operated via the Infotainment system, using your voice or using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

To activate voice control for the connected external device, hold down VOICE or APP/ or hold down the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

CAUTION

To establish the connection, the date and time in the Infotainment system must be set correctly. If the date and time setting is based on the GPS signal, then problems may arise with establishing a connection when the GPS signal reception is poor.

Note

- We recommend that you use extension cords from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- With some connected external devices, it is necessary for the connected external device to be “unlocked” for trouble-free functioning of the SmartLink function.

Main menu

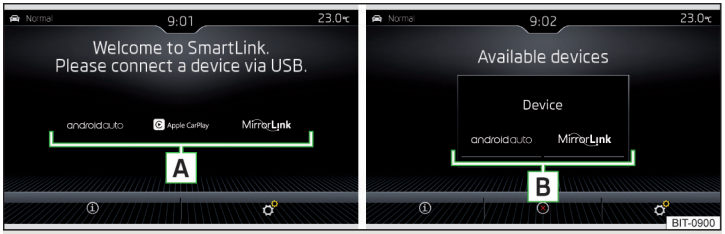


Fig. 161 **Supported communication systems / Example of available communication systems of the connected external device**

› To **display** the main SmartLink menu, press button MENU, then tap the function surface SmartLink .

› **or**: Press the APP button (applies to Infotainment Swing).

If no external device is connected, then a menu with supported communication systems SmartLink is displayed A » Fig. 161,

Main menu » Fig. 161

A Supported communication systems

B Available communication systems of the connected external device

ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink

⊗ Disconnection of the active connection

Settings of the SmartLink » page 109 menu or » page 113

Android Auto

Connection set-up / disconnection

Prerequisites for establishing a connection

✓ The external device to be connected must support the “Android Auto” communication system.

✓ In the external device to be connected, the “Android Auto” application must be installed.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected external device to be switched on.

A list external of devices, supported regions and applications that the “Android Auto” connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.

› Switch on the Infotainment system.

› Switch on the external device.

› Connect the external device to the USB input using a cable » page 74.

› Select the connection using “Android Auto” B » Fig. 161 *on page 139*.

Disconnection of the active connection

› In the “Android Auto” main menu, tap the function surface ⏻ .

› Tap the “ŠKODA” function surface to go back to the main menu SmartLink.

› Tap the function surface ⊗ .

› **or**: Disconnect the cable from the USB input. When reconnected, the external device is automatically connected.

Function restriction of Infotainment

For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

By connecting the external device with “Android Auto”, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the external device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.

For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth devices can be connected to the infotainment system.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment in Infotainment, then there is the option to start the route guidance in the “Android Auto” application. And vice versa, if **route guidance is currently taking place** in the “Android Auto” application, then there is the possibility that this will be **terminated** by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

Main menu

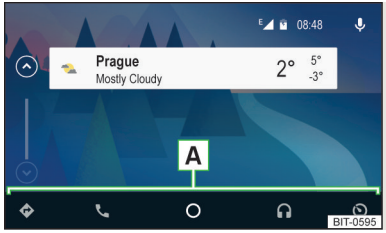


Fig. 162
Android Auto: Main menu

Main menu » Fig. 162

- Navigation applications
- Telephone applications
- Overview of running applications, telephone calls, accepted text messages, tasks in the working directory, weather or similar.
- Music applications
- Display of other available applications as well as the option of returning to the main SmartLink menu
- Switching on voice control (Google Voice)

Next to the function surface in area A, the symbol ▽, Then, by tapping on this function surface again, a list of new applications is displayed.

Apple CarPlay

Connection set-up / disconnection

Prerequisites for establishing a connection

✓ The external device to be connected must support the “Apple CarPlay” communication system.
✓ The data connection of the external device to be connected must be active.
✓ The voice control (Siri) of the external device to be connected must be active.

A list external of devices, supported regions and applications that the “Apple CarPlay” connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Infotainment system.
› Switch on the external device.
› Connect the external device to the USB input using a cable » page 74.
› Select the connection using “Apple CarPlay” B » Fig. 161 *on page 139*.

Disconnection of the active connection

› In the main menu “Apple CarPlay”, tap the function surface of the “ŠKODA” application, the main menu SmartLink is displayed.
› Tap the function surface ⊗ .
› **or**: Disconnect the cable from the USB input. When reconnected, the external device is automatically connected.

Function restriction of Infotainment

For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

By connecting the external device with “Apple CarPlay”, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected.

For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth devices can be connected to the infotainment system.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment using Infotainment, then this is terminated by starting the route guidance in the “Apple CarPlay” application. And vice versa, if **route guidance is currently taking place** in the “Apple CarPlay” application, then this will be **terminated** by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

Note

Some **phone features** of the connected external device can be operated in the display of the instrument cluster » page 50.

Main menu

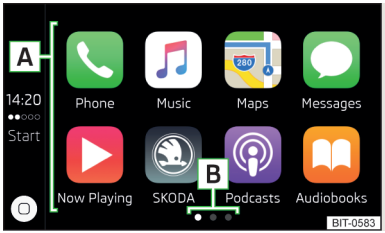


Fig. 163
Apple CarPlay: Main menu

Main menu » Fig. 163

A List of available applications

B More pages with applications

Depending on how long the function surface is pressed for:
- **Tap** - Return to “Apple Carplay” main menu
- **Hold** - Switch on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink®

Connection set-up / disconnection

Prerequisites for establishing a connection

✓ The external device to be connected must support the communication system “MirrorLink®”.

✓ The external device to be connected must have at least one “MirrorLink®”application installed.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected external device to be switched on.

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Infotainment system.
› Switch on the external device.
› Connect the external device to the USB input using a cable » page 74.
› Select the connection using “MirrorLink®” B » Fig. 161 *on page 139*.

Disconnection of the active connection

› In the main menu of “MirrorLink ®”, tap the function surface The SmartLink main menu is displayed.
› Tap the functional surface ⊗ .
› **or**: Disconnect the cable from the USB input. When reconnected, the external device is automatically connected.

Function restriction of Infotainment

Applies to Infotainment **Amundsen**: If you wish to use the device to be connected in the *Telephone* menu, the external device must be paired with and connected to the Infotainment system before establishing the connection» page 130.

Applies to Infotainment **Swing**. By connecting the external device to all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the external device will automatically be connected as the main telephone. Depending on the device to be connected, a connection confirmation may be required.

For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

Main menu

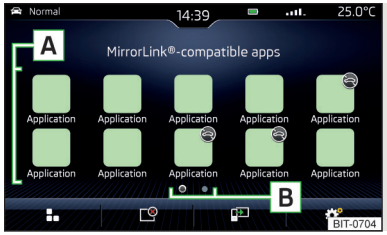


Fig. 164
MirrorLink®: Main menu

Main menu » Fig. 164

- Return to SmartLink main menu » page 139
- List of running applications
- Display of the last running application in the connected external device
- Settings of the SmartLink » page 109 menu or » page 113
- A List of applications
- B More pages with applications
- Applications cannot be operated while driving

Display of the function surfaces during the running application

- Return to “MirrorLink ®” main menu
- / Show function surfaces at the top/bottom (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- < / > / ∨ / ∧ Move the functional surfaces in the desired corner of the screen (applies to the infotainment Swing)

To show/hide the function surfaces, press the controller (applies to Infotainment Amundsen).

function problems

If problems occur with the “MirrorLink ®”connection, then one of the following messages may occur on the screen.

- **Fault: transfer** - Disconnect and reconnect the external device
- **MirrorLink® audio is unavailable.** - Disconnect and reconnect the external device
- **MirrorLink® availability on this mobile device is restricted.** - it is not possible to use the connected device during the journey or the device only has limited availability (applies to Infotainment swing)
- **The mobile device is locked. Please unlock the mobile device to use MirrorLink®** - “unlock” the connected external device
- **Unable to start app or app not working.** - Disconnect and reconnect the external device

Application“ŠKODA OneApp”

Introductory information



Fig. 165
Information on the ŠKODA OneApp application on the ŠKODA websites

A mobile telephone connected to the Infotainment system allows you to edit and evaluate journey data in the “ŠKODA One App” application.

After entering the following address into the web browser, the website is opened with information on the ŠKODA mobile applications.

http://go.skoda.eu/service-app

The “ŠKODA OneApp” application is available in the App Store and Google Play online shops.

“ŠKODA OneApp” application

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 165 .

For the full functionality of the “ŠKODA One App” application, data transfer from external devices must be activated.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

▶ To **activate data transfer from external devices**, press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA Apps**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

▶ To **activate data from external devices**, press the SETUP button, then tap on function surface → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**.

Note

Some functions of the application are not available in all countries or there is a function restriction during the journey » page 95, *Mobile devices and applications*.

Connecting to the Infotainment system

The mobile telephone can be connected to the Infotainment system using the SmartLink function or via WLAN.

Connection by SmartLink

› Switch on the ignition.
› Establish the connection via SmartLink (eg “MirrorLink®”)» page 138.
› In the list of available applications, select the “ŠKODA One App” application.

Depending on the type of external device connected, some applications can be started using voice activation, via the Infotainment or using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

Once connected, the contents of the application are displayed on the infotainment screen.

A possible connection between the mobile telephone and the Infotainment system via WLAN will be terminated after a connection is established using SmartLink.

Connection via WLAN (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)

› Switch on the ignition.
› Establish the WLAN connection » page 137.
› In the mobile telephone, start the “ŠKODA OneApp” application.

Disconnection

The connection can be disconnected in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the “ŠKODA OneApp” application.
› Disconnect the mobile telephone from the USB port or terminate the WLAN connection.

Navigation

Introductory information

Navigation - function sequence

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

Route guidance is started as follows.

› Find/enter a new destination **or** select one of the stored destinations.
› Confirm the route calculation in the destination details or, if necessary, adjust the route options.
› Select the preferred route type, if this is requested by the Infotainment system.

A route is calculated and route guidance starts.

The route guidance is provided by means of graphical driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

There is an option to add additional destinations during route guidance, or to adapt the route.

If a traffic radio station is available, information concerning traffic delays is evaluated by the Infotainment system and, if necessary, an alternative route is offered.

If you deviate from the route, then a new route is calculated.

GPS satellite signal

Infotainment uses the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellite signal for route guidance.

Outside the range of the GPS satellite signal (e.g. in dense vegetation, in tunnels, parking garages, etc.), the Infotainment system navigates only with restrictions, with the aid of vehicle sensors.

The Infotainment system offers the possibility off showing the following information on the current geographical position of the vehicle and the satellite signal in the **Position** » Fig. 168 *on page 145* split screen.

Geographical latitude
Geographical longitude

Elevation

Number of received/available satellites

If no GPS satellite signal is available, no values are displayed.

Navigation data

Navigation data source
The navigation data is stored on an **Original** SD Card.

In order to ensure the function of the navigation, the Original SD card, with the navigation data, must be inserted in the respective slot in the external module » page 97.

If the original SD card is damaged or lost, a new original SD card can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

With a **Non-original** SD Card, navigation does **not work**.

Determining the version of the navigation data
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Version information** .

Updating the navigation data
We recommend that you update the navigation data on a regular basis.

The Infotainment can give incorrect driving recommendations if the road condition or the traffic situation does not match the navigation data. This can lead to route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street. Therefore, observe the respective traffic signs while driving, which always have priority over the driving recommendations.

The information on updating the navigation data can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA websites.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Importing/updating the POI categories online

When “Infotainment Online” » page 13 services are activated, it is possible to download the POI categories created in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect portal” websites.

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Version information** → **Online update** → **Retrieve**.
▶ **or:** Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .

A menu for the import/update of POI categories is displayed.

▶ Select the desired list entries.
▶ Tap on the function surface **Retrieve** and confirm the download process.

Main menu



Fig. 166
Navigation: Main menu

› To **display**, press the NAV button.
› **or:** Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface .

Description of the function interfaces A » Fig. 166

Context-dependent:
Route guidance is deactivated - Search/enter a new destination
Route guidance is activated - The following menu is displayed:
- **Route details** - Displays the route details » page 157
- **Congestion ahead** - Manual adjusts traffic conditions » page 160
- **Enter destination** - Search / enter a new destination / stopover » page 145
- **Stop route guidance** - Stops route guidance » page 157

The following menu is displayed:
- **Curr. current position** - Store the current vehicle position as the flagged destination » page 149
- **Routes** - Displays the list of saved routes » page 158
- **Destinations** - Display the list of stored destinations » page 149
- **Last destinations** - Display the list of recent destinations to which route guidance was carried out » page 149
- **Home address** - Route guidance to your home address » page 150

Search for POIs in categories , and P

Map display options » page 152

/ Operation of *Media*/*Radio* playback

Display for the volume setting of the navigation announcements/repetition of the navigation announcement » page 156

Navigation settings » page 109

Map



Fig. 167
Map description

The following information and function surfaces can be displayed in the map. » Fig. 167

- A Vehicle position
- B Route
- C Function interfaces for card use » page 152
- D Function surface of the POI
- E Function surface for the POI list
- F Function surface for displaying a traffic incident » page 160
- G Information on the maximum permitted speed
- Destination position
- Intermediate destination position
- Destination position **Home address**
- Favourite position

Information in the status line

- Street name/street number of the current vehicle position
- Distance to destination
- Route to the stopover
- Estimated travelling time to the destination
- Estimated travelling time to the stopover
- Estimated time of arrival at destination/stopover

Split screen



Fig. 168
Split screen

› To **activate/deactivate**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **Split screen**.

› To **select content** of the split screen A » Fig. 168, tap on the function surface ▼ Tap and select one of the following menus, depending on the context.

- **Audio** - Operation of **Radio/Media**playback
- **Compass** - Displays the current vehicle location in relation to the compass directions
- **Most frequent routes** - Display the three most frequent routes (if guidance not being carried out) » page 157
- **Manoeuvre** - Display graphical driving recommendations (if route guidance is enabled) » page 156
- **Position** - Displays the geographical coordinates of the current vehicle location

Search for destination and enter

Selecting the type of destination search/destination entry

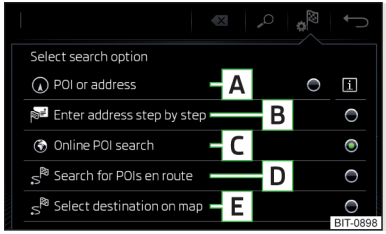


Fig. 169
Selecting the type of destination search/destination entry

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface → .
› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Enter destination** → .

Function surfaces » Fig. 169

A Search for a destination or POI (point of interest) by name » page 146
B Destination entry by address » page 147
C Online POI search » page 146
D Search for a point along the route (only works with active route guidance) » page 146
E Destination input via the map point or using the GPS coordinates » page 147

Search for destination/POI

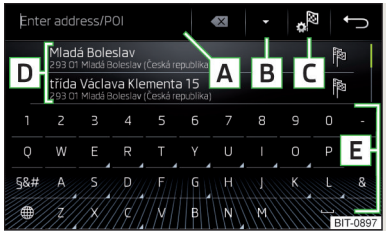


Fig. 170
Menu for the destination search

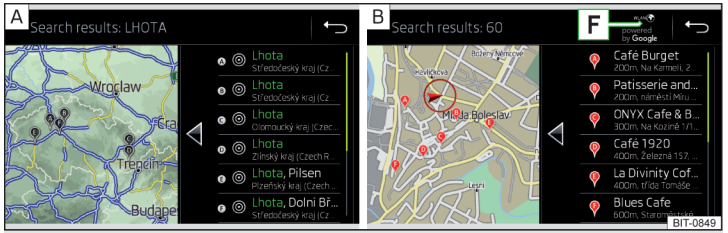


Fig. 171 **List of destinations visited: in the navigation data / online**

The feature allows a full text search of locations or points of interest (POI) by entering keywords.

Show menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface → .
› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → Tap **Enter destination**
› Then tap the function surface of one of the menu items for the destination search A, C or D » Fig. 169 *on page 145*.

Function surfaces » Fig. 170 and » Fig. 171

A Input line
B Depending on the search mode, the following symbols are displayed
- Display the map as well as the list of the destinations listed in the navigation database
- Display the map as well as the list of online destinations
C - Select the destination search/destination entry » page 145
D List of last destinations (if no character is entered) / List of visited destinations
E Keypad
F Status of online services

Find destination

▸ Enter the POI name or the POI category (POI) and, **if required**, the place and street name or house number/postal code.

A list of the destinations found is displayed in area D » Fig. 170.

▸ Select the desired destination and the destination details will be displayed.
▸ **or:** Tap the B » Fig. 170 function surface.

A map with the following symbols and a list of the destinations found is displayed.

Destinations found in the navigation data » Fig. 171 - A.
Destinations found online » Fig. 171 - B.

▸ Select the desired destination and the destination details will be displayed.

Enter destination using the address

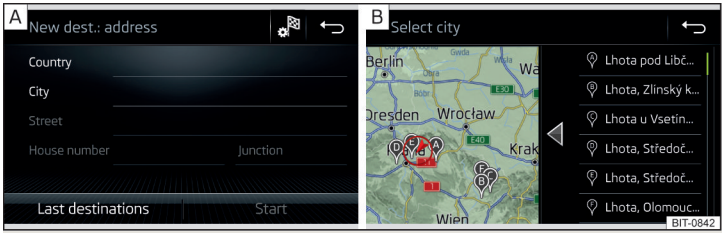


Fig. 172 **Enter destination using the address: Main menu / List of visited destinations**

Show menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → Tap **Enter destination**

› Then tap the function surface → B » page 145.

Enter dest.

› Enter the destination address and then confirm » Fig. 172 - A.

› Tap the function surface **OK** to see the destination details.

Relevant names (e.g. place/street names) are offered in the entry line during entry, depending on the context. The location of the proposed destination can be displayed by tapping the function surface **Map**.

Depending on the number of places visited, a map with a list of visited places can be displayed automatically » Fig. 172 - B.

The map with the list of visited locations can be accessed manually by tapping the function surface .

Entering a destination via the map point and using GPS coordinates



Fig. 173 **Enter destination: via the map point / using the GPS coordinates**

Show menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → Tap **Enter destination**

› Then tap the function surface → E » Fig. 169 *on page 145*.

Enter destination via map point

› By sliding the screen move the desired destination into the cross-hair » Fig. 173 - A.

› Tap the function surface **OK** to see the destination details.

Entering the destination using coordinates

› Tap in the values of the GPS coordinates one at a time and adjust » Fig. 173 - B,

› Tap the function surface **OK** to see the destination details.

If information is available about the point entered in the navigation data, then these will be displayed instead of the GPS coordinates (e.g. address A » Fig. 173).

Entering a destination via the map point

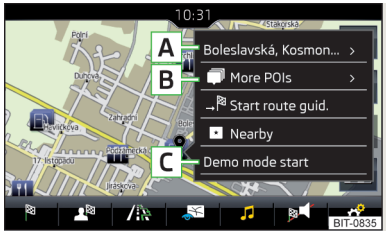


Fig. 174
Menu after tapping the map point

Tap on the map to display the symbol and a menu with the following menu items (depending on the context) » Fig. 174.

A — Display the destination details » page 155
B — Display the POI details/display the list of POIs (function surface)
Start route guidance to the selected point
Paste the selected point into the current route guidance as the next destination
Start route guidance to the favourite
Start route guidance to the home address
Destination search in the vicinity of the selected point » page 146
C — Define the starting point for demo mode (if it is turned on) » page 156

Find petrol station, restaurant or car park

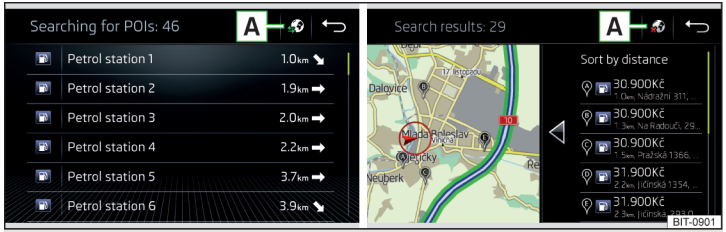


Fig. 175 **List of petrol stations visited: in the navigation data / online**

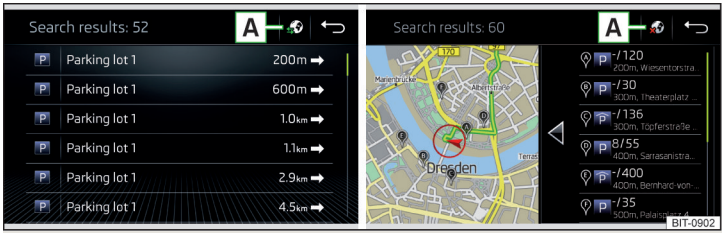


Fig. 176 **List of car parks visited: in the navigation data / online**

The Infotainment allows you to find petrol stations, restaurants or car parks quickly in the navigation data as well as online.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface / .
› Tap the function surface of the desired category.
› **or:** Press the MENU button, and then tap on function surface → or P .

Find destination in the navigation data
Depending on the context below, a list of POIs from the selected category is displayed.

▸ **No route guidance is taking place** - The nearest destinations in a radius of 200 km from the current vehicle position are displayed.
▸ **Route guidance is taking place** - Destinations on the route or near the route are displayed.

Find destination online
When “Infotainment Online” » page 13 services are activated, a list of POIs from the selected category in a radius around the current vehicle position is displayed, regardless of whether or not route guidance is taking place.

After searching for a destination, you can switch between the list of destinations found in the navigation data and the list of destinations found online by tapping one of the following function surfaces at position A » Fig. 175 or » Fig. 176.

Displays the list of destinations found in the navigation data.
Displays the list of destinations found online.

Note

With the → **Fuel options** → **Select preferred fuel station** function activated, the preferred fuel stations are displayed in the first three positions during the fuel station search.

Saved destinations

Last destinations

List of last destinations

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Last destinations**.

Details of the last destination

› In the main *Navigation* menu, press the NAV button.

If route guide is not taking place, the details of the last destination to which route guidance was carried out are displayed. **If route guidance is taking place**, the details of the final destination are displayed.

Last destinations in the destination/POI search menu

In the destination search menu, a short list of recent destinations is shown in area D » page 146.

Function surfaces in the list of last destinations

Search - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed when there are more than 5 entries available)

> - Display the details of the selected destination » page 155

Destination memory



Fig. 177 **Select list of stored destinations/categories of stored destinations**

List of stored destinations

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations**.

› Tap on function surface A » Fig. 177 and select one of the following categories of saved destinations B » Fig. 177.

All saved destinations
- - Flagged destination (vehicle position at the time of storage)
- - Stored destination (manually saved destination/destination imported in vCard format)
- - Favourite (destination with additional favourite property)

Favourites (the favourite location is shown on the map by the ★ symbol).

Telephone contact addresses of the connected telephone.

Online destinations created in the user profile on the "ŠKODA Connect Portal" website or in the "ŠKODA Connect" application » page 152

Function surfaces in the list of stored destinations

Search - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed if there are several entries on the next page of the list)

> - Display the destination details » page 155

Store target

- In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Last destinations**.
- Tap the functional surface > Tap on the desired destination, the destination details are displayed.
- Tap on the function surface **Store** .
- Rename the destination if necessary and confirm storage.

Save "flagged destination" (current vehicle position)

- In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Store** → **Store current position**.
- By tapping again on function surface **Rename**, you can rename the flagged destination and store it as a destination in the destination memory.

Storing the next flagged destination will overwrite the last flagged destination. To maintain the existing flagged destination, it must be stored in the Infotainment memory.

Save destination as a favourite/cancel

It is not possible to store a contact address, a vCard or a target image as a favourite.

- In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations**.
- Tap the functional surface ▼ and select the desired list of destinations.

▶ Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.
▶ Tap the function surface **Edit**.
▶ Tap the function surface **Favourite**.

Delete the destination
▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations**.
▶ Tap the functional surface ▼ and select the desired list of destinations.
▶ Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.
▶ Tap the function surface **Edit**.
▶ Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Home address

Define home address
When your home address is not entered, proceed as follows.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Home address**.
› Define the home address using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Change home address
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Define home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Edit**.
› Edit the home address or set one up using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Delete home address
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Import custom destinations

Introduction to the subject



Fig. 178
MyDestination application on the ŠKODA websites



Fig. 179
ŠKODA Connect websites

Your own destinations can be created using the ŠKODAapplication “MyDestination”, in the user profile on the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” or in the application “ŠKODA Connect”

Scan the QR code » Fig. 178 **or** enter the following address in your web browser to display more information on the “MyDestination” application.

http://go.skoda.eu/my-destination

For the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” refer to the website of “ŠKODA Connect”. You can open this by scanning the QR code » Fig. 179 **or** entering the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

Destinations in vCard format

In the Infotainment memory, you can import a custom destination in vCard format (*.vcf) from an SD card or a USB source. ▶

Import

› Insert the SD card into the external module or connect a USB source with the file of the custom destination.
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Import destinations (SD/USB)**.
› Select the source and confirm the import.

Route guidance

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → .
› Find and select the desired imported destination.

Delete custom destination

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → .
› Tap the functional surface > Tap on the desired own destination.
› In the destination details, tap the function surface **Edit** → **Delete** and confirm the deletion process.

POI categories created in the “MyDestination” application

Import/update

› Insert the SD card into the external module or connect a USB source with the POI categories.
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory**→ **Update "My POIs" (SD/USB)** Tap.

If the same custom POI category name already exists in the Infotainment memory, then it will be overwritten during the import.

Show POIs in the map

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** → **My points of interest (Personal POI)**.
› Select the imported POI category.

Guidance to the POI

› In the map, tap on the traffic obstruction symbol.

There are details of the selected target appears » page 155,

Clear all own POI categories

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete "My POIs"**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

POI categories created in the user profile in the “ŠKODA Connect Portal”

Your own POI categories created in the user profile on the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” can be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The requirement for importing a POI category is that “Infotainment Online” » page 13 services are activated.

Importing POI categories

In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Version information** → **Online update**.

› **or:** Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .

A menu for importing/updating the navigation data and POI categories is displayed.

› Tap the function surface **POIs** → **Retrieve**.

If new POI categories are available, their quantity and file size is displayed by the Infotainment system.

› Tap the function surface **Start** to start route guidance.
› To complete the import, tap the function surface **Next** and confirm the import.

Show POIs in the map

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** → **My points of interest (Personal POI)**.
› Select the imported POI category.

Route guidance to a destination in the imported POI category

› In the map, tap on the traffic obstruction symbol.

There are details of the selected target appears » page 155,

Clear all own POI categories

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete "My POIs"**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Destinations created in the user profile in the “ŠKODA Connect Portal”

The destinations you have created in the user profile on the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” or in the application “ŠKODA Connect” can be imported to the Infotainment memory.

The requirement for importing the destinations is that “Infotainment Online” » page 13 services are activated.

importing destinations

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → .
› **or:** Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .
› Tap on the function surface **Update**.
› If new destinations are available, then confirm the import.

If the user profile on the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” or in the application “ŠKODA Connect” creates an object and sent to the Infotainment, after switching on the ignition in the Infotainment screen displays a message regarding a new destination with the option to import this displayed.

Guidance to an online destination

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → .
› In the list of online destinations, find and select the desired destination.

Deleting online destinations

› To delete **all** online destinations go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Online destinations**.
› To delete **one** online destination, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → → > → **Edit** → **Delete**.

Image with GPS coordinates



Fig. 180
Image with GPS coordinates

Infotainment enables guidance to the GPS coordinate data stored in the image.

› Press the MENU button then tap the function surface **Images**.
› Select the connected source and open the image with GPS coordinates.
› Tap the function surface » Fig. 180 Surface in the image, a menu opens with the option to start route guidance.

The image can be obtained from an external device in which GPS coordinates are stored during the imaging process. This could be created in the “MyDestination” application and imported » Fig. 178 *on page 150*.

Map

Map display options

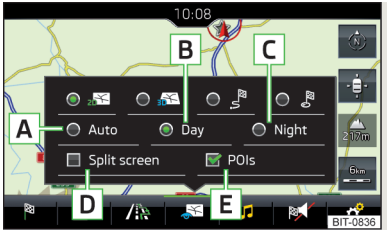


Fig. 181
Map display options

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface .

The following function surfaces are displayed » Fig. 181.

- 2D - Two-dimensional map display
- 3D - Three-dimensional map display
- Display of the route from the current vehicle location to the destination
- Display of the position of the destination or the next stopover on the map (depending on the setting for menu item → **Advanced settings** → **Status line:**)
- **A** Automatic map display in day or night mode (depending on the currently active vehicle lighting)
- **B** Daytime map display
- **C** Night-time map display
- **D** Switch the split screen display on/off » page 145
- **E** Switching on/ off of the selected POI categories display » page 148, *Entering a destination via the map point*

If the map scale of the 2D Map or 3D Map is greater than 10 km, then the map is automatically displayed as 2D and aligned in the direction of north. If the scale is increased beyond this value, then the map is switched back to the original representation.

Map scale



Fig. 182 **Function surfaces for changing the map scale**

It is possible to change the map scale manually or to activate the automatic scale change.

› Tap the function surface **A** » Fig. 182.

In area **B** » Fig. 182, function surfaces for changing the map scale are displayed.

Types of manual scale change

▶ Touch the screen with two fingers and pull them apart or close them together.

▶ Press the control knob ⊙ .

Activating automatic scale change

If the automatic scale is active, the map scale will change automatically depending on the type of roads travelled (motorway - smaller map scale / town - larger map scale) and the manoeuvre to be carried out.

▶ To **activate** the automatic scale change, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on function surface → .

Tap the functional surface is highlighted in green.

The automatic scale is only active as long as the map is centred on the vehicle position (the function surface is hidden).

▶ To **deactivate** the automatic scale change, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on function surface → .

Tap the functional surface is highlighted in white.

The function is also deactivated when the map is moved or the map scale is changed manually.

Map view in reduced scale

▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap on function surface **A** → .

The map scale is reduced for a few seconds and then restored.

Changing map orientation

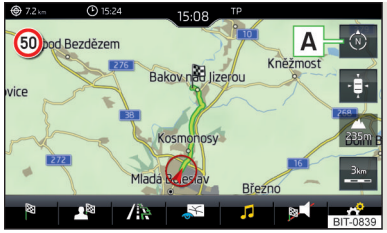


Fig. 183
Changing the map orientation

You can change the map orientation under the following conditions.

✓ The map is in the 2D display.
✓ The map is centred (the function surface is hidden).
✓ The map scale is max. 10 km.

› To **change the map orientation**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on function surface A » Fig. 183.

The map is oriented to the north
The symbol the vehicle position rotates, the map and the Polar Star Symbol do not rotate.

With a larger map scale than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

Map oriented to the direction of travel
The map and the Polar Star symbol rotate, the vehicle position symbol does not rotate.

Map centring

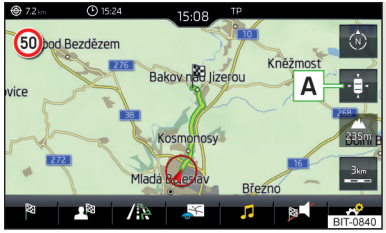


Fig. 184
Map centring

The moved map can be centred in the vehicle, destination or route position.

› To **centre the map**, tap on function surface A » Fig. 184.

POIs display

The Infotainment system offers the possibility of displaying POI symbols on the map on the Infotainment screen.

› To **activate/deactivate the display**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **POIs**.
› To **select the POIs to be displayed**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** and select the desired categories (max. 10).

Road sign display

The Infotainment system offers the option of displaying the traffic signs stored in the navigation data or detected by the front camera during guidance on the Infotainment screen G » Fig. 167 *on page 145*.

› To **activate/deactivate** the road sign display, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **Map** → **Show road signs.**

For some vehicles it is possible to set an **alert when exceeding the permitted** speed limited by a **road sign**.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on function surface → **Driver assistance** → **Speed warning:.**

When **towing a trailer**, we recommend that you activate recognition of road signs relevant to trailers.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on function surface → **Driver assistance** → **Show road signs relevant to trailers.**

Route guidance

Introduction to the subject

A **route** is created by starting route guidance to a destination. Additional **stopovers** can be added to the route.

Route guidance takes place as follows
▶ Through graphical driving instructions on the Infotainment screen and in the display of the instrument cluster.
▶ Through navigation announcements.

The Infotainment system tries to allow for continued guidance even if the navigation data is incomplete or there is no data at all for the given area.

The route is recalculated each time you ignore driving recommendations or change the route.

CAUTION
The navigation announcements provided may vary from the actual situations, e.g. due to out-of-date navigation data.

Destination details

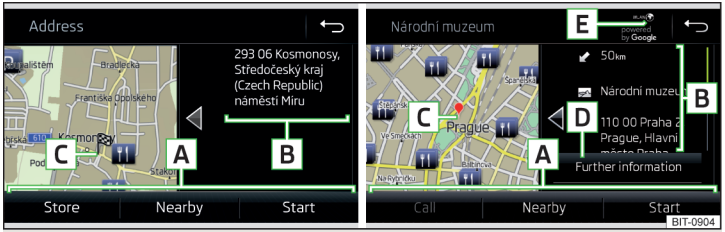


Fig. 185 **Details of the: in the navigation data / destination searched for online**

The following menu items and information are displayed in the destination details » Fig. 185.

- **A** Area with function surfaces
- **B** Detailed destination information
- **C** Destination position in the map
- **D** Detailed destination information (if available)
- **E** Status of online services

Display the destination details
The destination details can be displayed in one of the following ways.

- While entering a destination.
- By tapping on the function surface > in the destination list.
- Press the NAV button in the main *Navigation* menu to display the details of the last destination.

Function surfaces
Using the function surfaces in area **A**, the following functions can be performed, depending on the context.

- Start/stop route guidance.
- Searching for a nearby destination » page 146.
- Set route options.
- Store destination.
- Edit destination (the destination can be deleted, renamed or saved as a favourite).
- Dial the POI phone number (if the Infotainment system is connected to a phone » page 130, *Pairing and connecting*).

Route calculation and starting route guidance

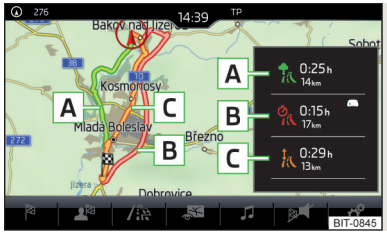


Fig. 186 **Alternative routes**

Routes are calculated based on the set route options. The route options can be set: → **Route options**.

Alternative routes
With selection of alternative routes turned on, the following menu is displayed after calculation of a new route » Fig. 186.

- **A** Calculate the most economical route with shortest travelling time and distance travelled – the route is highlighted green
- **B** Calculate the fastest route to the destination, even if a detour is necessary - the route is highlighted in red
- **C** Calculate the shortest route to the destination, even if a longer travelling time is required - the route is highlighted in orange

It is possible to select an already calculated alternative route before calculation of the remaining routes is completed.

Selecting the type of route will start the route guidance.

If no route selection is made within 30 s of calculation of all routes, route guidance will start automatically according to the preferred route type.

Route calculation for trailer towing

When driving with a trailer or any other accessory connected to the trailer socket, we recommend that you switch on trailer recognition, if necessary, to set the maximum speed for towing a trailer.

› To calculate the route when driving with a trailer, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap the function surface → **Route options** → .
› To set the maximum speed of the trailer, press the CAR button, then tap on function surface → **Driver assistance** → *Trailer recognition* → **Maximum speed for trailer**.

Demo mode

Demo mode provides a driving simulation to the entered destination. The function allows you to travel through the calculated route “virtually”.

When Demo mode is turned on, a menu for route guidance in Demo mode or in normal mode is displayed before route guidance starts.

› To **activate/deactivate**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Demo mode**.

When Demo mode is activated, the route starting point can be defined.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface Tap→ **Advanced settings** → **Define demo mode starting point**.
› Define the starting point by entering the address or the current vehicle position.
› The demo mode starting point can also be set provided demo mode is turned on by tapping on the desired map location and selecting the menu item **Start Demo Mode** » page 148, *Entering a destination via the map point*.

Graphical driving recommendations

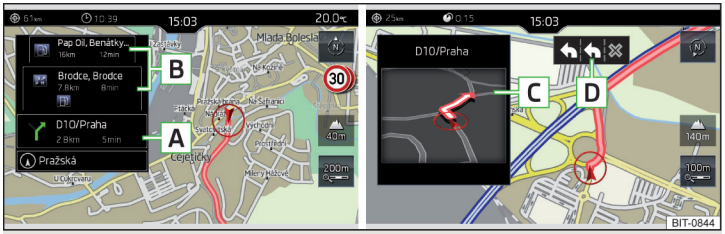


Fig. 187 **Driving recommendations/driving recommendation detail**

The display of the graphical driving recommendations is carried out in the split screen **Manoeuvre** as well as the display of the instrument cluster.

In the **Manoeuvre** split screen, the following driving recommendations are displayed » Fig. 187.

A Street name/street number of the current vehicle position
B Driving recommendations with street names/road numbers, the route and the travel time to the manoeuvre location
C Driving recommendation details (displayed near the manoeuvre)
D Lane guidance

In the **Manoeuvre** split screen, the Infotainment system also draws your attention to traffic obstructions received via TMC, as well as to motorways, car parks, petrol stations or restaurants.

Speed limits

With the → **Advanced settings** → **Note:**National border crossed , display the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

These speed limits can be displayed by tapping on function surface → **Top speed** in the main menu *navigation*.

Navigation announcements

The Infotainment system issues navigation announcements during route guidance.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Flawless clarity of the message (e.g., road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

The last navigation announcement can be repeated in the main *Navigation* menu by tapping on the function surface → .

The timing of the navigation announcement is dependent on the type of road and on the driving speed.

The type of navigation announcements can be set: → **Navigation announcements**.

Note

Route guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without navigation announcements.

Most frequent routes

The most frequently travelled routes are automatically saved by Infotainment. Of these, up to 3 routes can be offered, which best match the current time, day of the week as well as the vehicle position.

Route guidance to one of the routes used most frequently can be started provided **route guidance is not currently active**.

› To display the menu with the most frequently travelled routes, go to the split screen and tap on the function surface **Most frequent routes** → **Show on map**.
› Select the desired route.

The selected route is then calculated and route guidance starts.

The menu display in the split screen can be activated/deactivated in the main *Navigation* menu by tapping the function surface → **Route options** → **Most frequent routes switched on/off**.

The stored most frequent routes can be deleted in the main *Navigation* menu by tapping the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Most frequent routes deleted**.

Note

Route guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without navigation announcements.

Finish route guidance

Route guidance can be finished in one of the following ways.

› The final destination is reached.
› In the main *Navigation* menu by tapping the function surface → **Stop route guidance**.
› By turning off the ignition for longer than 120 minutes.

Abort route guidance

If the ignition is switched off and on again, then route guidance is continued in one of the following ways, depending on the stop time.

▶ Within 15 minutes - route guidance continues, taking the calculated route into account.
▶ From 15 minutes to 120 minutes - after confirming the message on the Infotainment screen, the route guidance continues, taking the calculated route into account.
▶ After 120 min - route guidance is cancelled.

Route

Route details

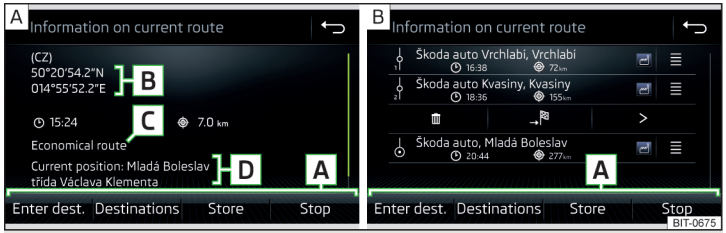


Fig. 188 **Route details: a route destination / several route destinations**

During route guidance, the **Route details** (information about the current route) can be displayed.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Route details**.

One route destination
In the route details, the following information is displayed at the destination » Fig. 188 - A.

A Area with function surfaces
B Destination information
Estimated time of arrival at destination/remaining driving time to destination
Remaining distance to the destination
C Chosen route type (economic, fastest, shortest)
D Current vehicle position (address/GPS coordinates)

You can adjust the display of the arrival time or the remaining driving time as follows.

▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Time display:**.

Several route destinations
In the route details, the following information is displayed at the respective destinations » Fig. 188 - B.

A Area with function surfaces
Stopover (with sequential number)
Final destination
Estimated time of arrival at destination/stopover
Driving distance to destination/stopover
Change positions of the destinations with each other
Delete the destination
Continuation of the route guidance from the selected target (previous stopovers are skipped)
> Display the destination details » page 155

Insert destination into the route
▶ In the area A, tap on the function surface **Enter destination** and enter a new destination.
▶ **or:** Tap on the area A the function surface **destinations** and select an object in the list of stored destinations.

Each additional destination is added to the list as the first subsequent destination route.

Change positions of destinations with each other
▶ Press and hold the relevant function surface and move the destination to the desired position.

For destinations already reached on the route, the note **Destination reached** is displayed below the destination name. It is no longer possible to change the position of these destinations with each other.

Store route
▶ In area A, tap the function surface **Save**.
▶ Save the edited route as a new route or replace the existing saved route.

The route is stored in the route list » page 158.

Stop route guidance
▶ In area A, tap the function surface **Stop**.

Route list

In the route list, it is possible to create, import, save or delete routes or start navigation.

New route
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Routes** → **New route**.

Insert a route destination in one of the following ways.

› Tap on the function surface **Enter destination** and enter a new destination.
› **or:** Tap on the function surface **Destinations** and select a destination from the list of stored destinations.
› To save the created route, tap the function surface **Store**.
› To start route guidance, tap the function surface **Start**.

Route import
A prerequisite for importing the route is that “Infotainment Online” » page 13 services are activated.

A route that has been created in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website and sent to the Infotainment system can be imported into the Infotainment memory even **before switching on the ignition** .

If the route was created when the ignition was switched on and sent to Infotainment, Infotainment is not imported until after switching off (for at least 15 minutes) and after switching the ignition back on again.

› Switch on the ignition. When a new route is available, a message regarding the option to import this route appears in the Infotainment screen **automatically** .

If the user opts not to import the route immediately, the route can be imported later **manually** as follows.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Routes** Tap to check if a new route is available.
› **or:** Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .
› Tap the function surface **Import routes**.

If a new route is available, a message will be displayed by the Infotainment system.

› Tap the function surface **Retrieve** to start route guidance.

After being successfully imported, the route is displayed in the list of saved routes.

Managing saved routes

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **routes** .
› Choose the desired route, and then select one of the following functions.

Delete - delete the stored route

Edit - Edit the route » page 157, *Route details*

Start - Calculate route and start route guidance » page 155, *Route calculation and starting route guidance*

Traffic reports

List of traffic reports

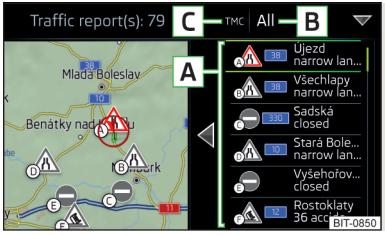


Fig. 189
List of traffic reports

The Infotainment system enables the reception of traffic reports, which include information regarding traffic congestion, using TMC (Traffic Message Channel) or online (when “Infotainment Online”» page 13 services are activated).

ŠKODA AUTO does not accept responsibility for the availability, content, up-to-dateness or evaluation of TMC traffic reports or other data provided by third parties. ŠKODA AUTO is not entitled to examine or adapt this data in any way. The data can only be edited by Infotainment in areas where it is available.

› To **display the list of traffic reports**, press the MENU button then tap the function surface .

In the list of traffic messages and the map, a max. of 6 messages are displayed, that are provided with a letter and a traffic obstruction symbol (e.g. , ,) A » Fig. 189.

The traffic reports available on the route are indicated by a navigation announcement.

Source of traffic information

At position C » Fig. 189, the following symbols can be displayed.

TMC TMC Traffic Information (when the symbol is crossed out, the Infotainment system is out of range of any traffic information provider)

Online traffic report

Display options

▸ **Route guidance is not taking place** - All traffic messages are displayed.
▸ **Route guidance is taking place** - After tapping function surface B » Fig. 189 in the displayed menu, you can select all traffic messages by tapping the function surface **All areas**, **or** you can select only the traffic messages present on the route by tapping the function surface **Route**.

A traffic report may contain some of the following information.

▸ Symbol of the traffic obstruction
▸ Number of the road affected
▸ Name of the location affected
▸ Description of the traffic obstruction

Colour differentiation of the importance of the traffic obstruction in a TMC message
The symbol for the traffic obstruction (e.g. ⚠, ⚠, ⛔) precedes the obstruction and the length of the obstruction is shown in the map on the right along the route.

Depending on the context, the symbol for the obstruction is displayed in one of the following ways.

No route guidance is taking place
- **Red** - All traffic obstructions

Route guidance is not taking place
- **Grey** - The traffic obstruction is not on the route
- **Red** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route will not be recalculated and the route passes through the traffic obstruction
- **Orange** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route will be recalculated and an alternative route is available

Colour differentiation of the importance of a traffic obstruction from an online message
The colour differentiation of traffic obstructions is dependent on the provider of the online traffic reports.

To set the traffic obstructions display, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap the function surface ⚙ → **Map** → **Traffic flow settings**.

Update
The list of traffic reports is continuously updated by the Infotainment system.

Details of the traffic report

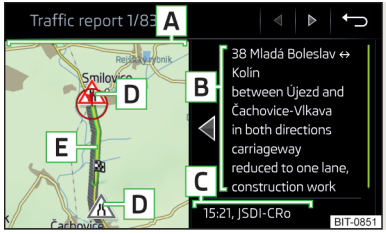


Fig. 190
Details of the traffic report

The details of the traffic message depends on the source of the traffic message.

› To **display** this, select the desired traffic report from the list of traffic reports.
› **or:** Tap on the traffic obstruction icon in the map.

Depending on the context, the following information and functional surfaces are displayed » Fig. 190.

A	Map of the affected location
B	Description of the traffic obstruction
C	Reception timing and information relating to the traffic report provider (if “ŠKODA Connect” is the provider, it is an online traffic report)
D	Symbol of the traffic obstruction
E	Length of the traffic obstruction

Dynamic route

The Infotainment system allows an evaluation of the traffic reports received during the route guidance. If the following conditions are met, a bypass route is calculated and the appropriate announcement is issued.

✓ The dynamic route function is turned on.
✓ The traffic obstruction included in the traffic information is on the route.
✓ The traffic obstruction is evaluated by the Infotainment system as being significant.

› To **activate/deactivate**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Route options** → **Dynamic route**.

Entering/removing a traffic obstruction on the route manually

If a traffic obstruction is detected during route guidance (e.g. traffic jam), this traffic obstruction be entered into the route manually.

Once entered, the Infotainment system recalculates and provides an alternative route.

Enter traffic obstruction
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface 🏁 → **Congestion ahead**.
› Adjust the length of the traffic obstruction.

The traffic obstruction is displayed in red in the map to the right along the route.

Remove traffic obstruction
The traffic obstruction is removed from the route after completion of the route guidance or can manually be removed as follows.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Delete "congestion ahead"**.

Vehicle systems

CAR - Vehicle settings

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

In the CAR menu, you can display driving data and vehicle information and can configure some vehicle systems.

Reset to factory settings
You can reset the factory settings in the Infotainment system in menu CAR → → **Factory settings** menu.

Note
Settings relating to the vehicle systems can only be made when the ignition is switched on.

Main menu

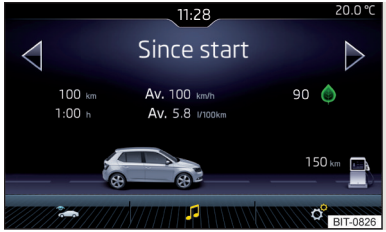


Fig. 191
Function surfaces in the main menu

› Press the CAR button to display the main menu with the following function surfaces » Fig. 191.

Select the following menu points
- **Journey data**
- **DriveGreen**
- **Vehicle status**

Operating playback - Radio/Media

Vehicle system settings

Driving

Starting-off and driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

Depending on equipment fitted, it is possible to switch the ignition on/off and start/stop the engine with the **key in the ignition** or using the **starter button**.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- While driving with the engine stopped the ignition must always be switched on. Otherwise, the steering may lock - The is a danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 167, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft, accident etc.!
- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – There is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid.
- On vehicles with the starter button, pay attention to where the key is located. The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 162 first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as immobiliser) makes the theft or unauthorised use of your vehicle more difficult.

Immobiliser
The immobilizer allows the engine to be started only with the original car key.

Malfunction of the immobiliser
If the immobiliser in the key fails, it is not possible to start the engine. A corresponding message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock - locking

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until the steering lock engages.
› On vehicles with a **starter button**, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked automatically after the vehicle has been locked.

Steering lock - unlock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, insert the key into the ignition and turn on the ignition. If this is not possible, then move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, as a result of which the steering lock should unlock.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, get into the vehicle and close the driver's door. Under certain circumstances, the steering lock can be unlocked only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - risk of accident!

Switching the ignition on/off

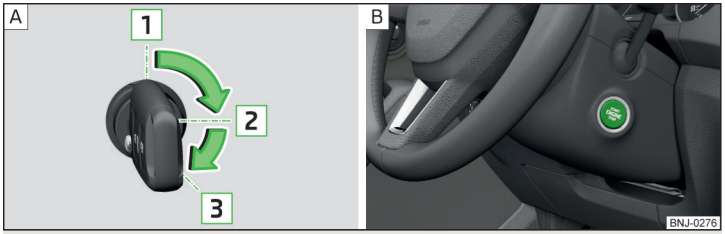


Fig. 192 **Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock / starter button**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 162 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock» Fig. 192 - A

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching on /off ignition in vehicles with starter button

› Press the» Fig. 192 - B button, the ignition is turned on / off.

On vehicles with **manual transmission** the pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

Starting/Stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 162 first.

Before starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and » ! depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Starting engine

› On vehicles with **Ignition lock**, turn the key to position 3 and the engine starts» Fig. 192 *on page 163* A. Then release the key, the engine will start automatically.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after 30 s.

› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button briefly» Fig. 192 *on page 163* - B, the motor will start automatically.

Switching the engine off

› Stop the vehicle.
› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, turn the key to position 1 » Fig. 192 *on page 163* A.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button» Fig. 192 *on page 163* - B, the engine and the ignition will be switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey if the engine has been working at high revs over a prolonged period, but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Emergency shutdown of the engine in vehicles with starter button

The system is equipped with a protective device against accidental switching off, the engine can only be shut off while driving in the event of an emergency.

› Keep the knob pressed » Fig. 192 *on page 163* - B or press it twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

! CAUTION

When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.

Note

▪ The engine running noises may be louder at first for a short time after starting the cold engine.
▪ You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period, otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.
▪ After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may (also intermittently) continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Problems with starting the engine - Vehicles with starter button



Fig. 193
Starting the engine - Press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 162 first.

If no engine start is possible and the display of the instrument cluster shows a message that the key could not be detected by the system or there is a system fault, then try to start the engine as follows.

› Press the starter button with the key » Fig. 193.

If the engine does not start, the help of a specialist garage is required.

! CAUTION

The key may not be detected by the system if the battery in the key is running out of charge or the signal fails (strong electromagnetic field) or is shielded (e.g. in an aluminium case).

START-STOP system

Introduction

The START-STOP system (hereinafter only referred to as "system") reduces the CO_2 emissions, as well as harmful emissions and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them must be met by the driver, the others are related to the system and cannot be influenced nor recognised.

For this reason, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every time** the ignition is switched on (even if this was manually deactivated using the key (A OFF)).

Note

If the engine was stopped by the system, the ignition remains on.

Functionality

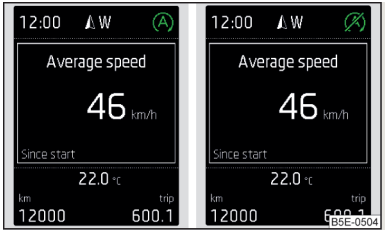


Fig. 194
Display

Vehicles with manual transmission
The motor is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is shifted to the neutral position and the clutch pedal is released.

The motor is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission
The motor is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a standstill and the brake pedal is actuated.

The motor is automatically **started** as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Conditions for the system function

The following conditions are required for the correct system function.

✓ The driver's door is closed.

✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.

✓ The driving speed exceeded 4 km/h after the last stop.

✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

System status

The system status is shown on the display » Fig. 194 when stopped.

Ⓐ The engine is automatically switched off; when driving off again, the engine is started automatically.

The motor is not automatically switched off.

The engine does not shut down when the vehicle stops, if e.g. the following applies.

- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air conditioning or heating output (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

If the engine has shut down automatically but the system detects that the engine is required to run (e.g. if the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly) then the system automatically starts up the engine.

More information about the current system status can be displayed in the Infotainment screen, in the CAR → → **Vehicle status** menu.

If there is a **system fault**, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened after the engine has switched off automatically, the engine will have to be restarted manually.
- No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

Deactivate/activate the system manually



Fig. 195
Button for the START-STOP system

› To **deactivate/activate** the system, press the button» Fig. 195.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol in the button lights up .

If the system is deactivated, then it is automatically activated again after switching the ignition off and on.

Note

If the system is automatically deactivated when the engine is turned off, then the automatic start process takes place.

Braking and parking

Introduction

The **wear and tear** on the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. In difficult conditions (e.g. urban, sporty driving), the condition of the brakes should be checked between service intervals by a specialist garage.

Brake response can be slower if the brakes **are covered in moisture or, in winter, have a layer of ice or salt on them**. The brakes should be cleaned and dried by applying the brakes many times over » !.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads can occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes should be cleaned by applying the brakes several times over » !.

Before negotiating a **long or steep gradient**, reduce speed and shift down a gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. If, nevertheless, there is a need for additional braking, it should be carried out at intervals.

Emergency braking warning - If it is necessary to brake hard, the system may cause the brake lights to automatically flash, to alert the traffic behind.

New brake pads must first be““run in”” because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect. Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

If the **brake fluid level** is too low, it can cause **faults in the braking system**; the warning light will light up in the instrument cluster » page 38, *Braking system*. If the warning light does not light up, yet the stopping distance is perceived to be longer than before, the driving style should be adapted in view of the unknown cause of the problem, and braking kept to a minimum - seek the help of a specialist garage without delay.

The **brake booster** increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

! WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident.
- The clutch pedal must be depressed when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- Do not depress the brake pedal, if there is no requirement to slow down. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear - The is a risk of an accident!
- Only brake for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- Recommendations for new brake pads should be followed.
- When stopping and parking, the parking brake should always be applied firmly, otherwise the vehicle could move off - The is a risk of an accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the front brakes could be in danger of overheating – The is a risk of an accident!

Handbrake



Fig. 196
Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

The handbrake secures the vehicle against unwanted movement when stopping and parking.

Apply

› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Undoing

› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 196.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied. The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of over 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Disengage the handbrake completely. A handbrake which is only partially disengaged can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » !.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **Automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission**, select **first gear** or **Reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

- The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle in places where the underside of your vehicle could come into contact with flammable materials (e.g. dry grass, leaves, spilled fuel etc.) There is a risk of a fire and could result in severe injuries!
- When leaving the vehicle never leave people unattended in the car who could, for example, lock the vehicle or release the brake - The is a risk of accidents and injury!

Manual gear shifting and pedals

Introduction

CAUTION

When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Manual gear changing

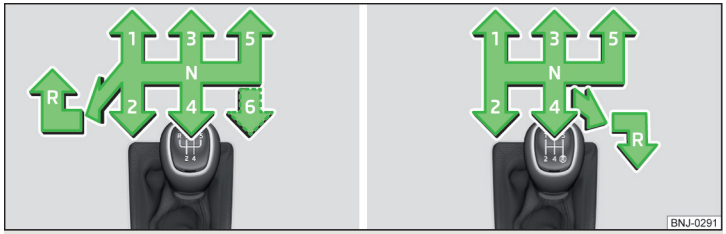


Fig. 197 **The shift pattern: Variant 1 (5-speed or 6-speed manual gearbox) / variant 2 (5-speed gearbox with the 1.0 litre MPI engine)**

Read and observe ! on page 167 first.

On the gear lever, the shift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown » Fig. 197.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 46.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Engage reverse gear - Version 1

› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Push the shift lever downwards fully to the left and then forward into **R** » Fig. 197.

Selecting reverse gear - variant 2 (applies to the 1.0 l MPI motor)

› Stop the vehicle.

› The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Wait briefly.
› Push down on the shift lever, then push fully over to the right and then backwards, to position **R**.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

Read and observe ! on page 167 first.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

Only a floor mat (ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range) which can be secured to the attachment points should be used in the driver's footwell.

WARNING

There should be no objects in the driver's footwell, otherwise the pedal operation can be impeded - risk of accident!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

The automatic transmission performs an automatic gear change irrespective of the engine load, the operation of the accelerator, the vehicle speed and the selected driving mode.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- Do not accelerate when selecting drive mode prior to moving off - The is a risk of an accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – The is a risk of an accident!
- If the vehicle stalls with the engine running, in the **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic mode, then the vehicle must be prevented from rolling away by means of the brake pedal, parking brake or using the Auto Hold function. Even when the engine is idling, power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle will creep.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever must always be set to **P** . Otherwise, the vehicle may start to move - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- If you want to move the selector lever from position **N** to position **D** / **S** whilst driving, the engine must be running at idling speed.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Select selector lever position

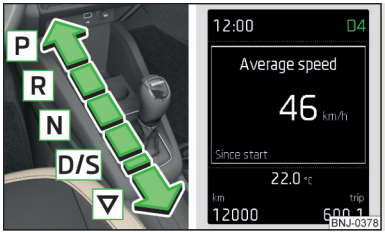


Fig. 198
Selector lever settings / display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 168 first.

The selector lever can be moved through shifting to one of the following positions » Fig. 198. In some positions you have to push the locking button » page 169, *Selector lever lock*.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 198.

P **Park** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill. The drive wheels are mechanically locked.

R **Reverse gear** - The position can only be selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling.

N **Neutral (idle position)** - Power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted.

D/S **Forward mode / sports programme** - the gear change takes place in the position **S at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**

▽ (Sprung position) - choice between positions **D** and **S**

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode .

Selector lever lock



Fig. 199
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 168 first.

The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** modes to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

Disengage selector lever from P mode or N

› Press the brake pedal and, at the same time, push the lock button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 199.

To move the selector lever from mode **N** to **D/S** only the brake pedal is pressed.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

If it is not possible to release the gear selector from mode **P** in the usual manner, then this can be emergency unlocked » page 232.

i Note

If you want to switch the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being selected accidentally.

Manual shifting (Tiptronic)

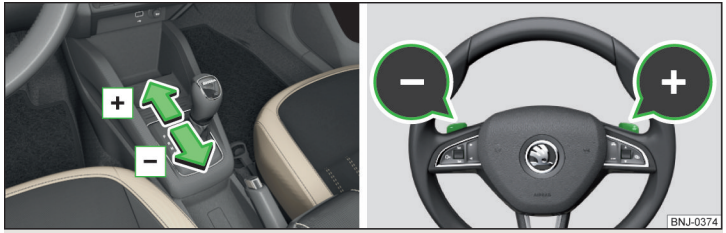


Fig. 200 **Selector lever/multi function steering wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 168 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel.

Switching to manual shifting using the selector lever

› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle. The current gear is maintained.

Switching to manual shifting by using the rocker switches under the multifunction steering wheel

› To **change gear**, pull one of the rocker switches - / + briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 200.

› To **cancel** manual shift, pull the rocker switch + towards the steering wheel for more than 1 s.

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches - / + for a certain time, manual shifting of the gears is deactivated automatically.

Changing gear

› To **shift up**, tap the selector lever forwards + or pull the rocker switch + briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 200.
› To **shift down**, tap the selector lever backwards - or pull the rocker switch - briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 200.

The currently selected gear is marked with the letter **M** in the instrument cluster display.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 46.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached. If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Note

It may be advantageous to use manual gear shifting when driving downhill, for example. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes.

Start and drive

Read and observe ! and ! on page 168 first.

Moving off and pausing temporarily

› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Start the engine.
› Press the locking button and move the selector lever to the desired position » page 168.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time (e.g. at a crossroads). However, the brake pedal should be depressed, in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Accelerate to max. speed during the journey (kickdown function)

If the accelerator pedal is depressed while the vehicle is in forward drive mode, the kick-down function is turned on.

The gear change is adjusted accordingly to achieve maximum acceleration.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration (e.g. on slippery roads) can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle – There is a risk of accident!

Running in and economical driving

Run in engine

During the first 1 500 km, the driving style is decisive for successful the running in process is.

During the first 1 000 km, the engine should not be charged with more than 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine revs and without the trailer.

From about **1 000 to 1 500 km** the engine can be pushed up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

Tips on economical driving

Fuel consumption depends on the driving style, road and weather conditions, and similar such factors.

For an economical driving style, the following instructions must be observed.

▶ Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
▶ Observe the recommended gear » page 46.
▶ Avoid full throttle and high speeds.
▶ Reduce idling.
▶ Avoid short distances.
▶ Ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure is maintained » page 217.
▶ Avoid unnecessary ballast.
▶ Remove the roof rack before driving if it is not needed.
▶ Only turn on electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating) for as long as necessary.
▶ Briefly ventilate before turning on the cooling system, do not use the cooling system with the windows open.
▶ Do not leave windows open at high speeds.

Drive Green function

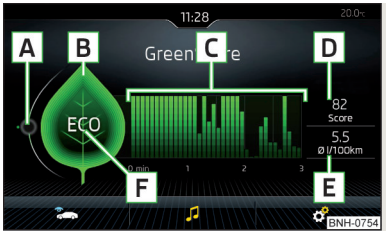


Fig. 201
Display on Infotainment screen

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to as "DriveGreen") evaluates the driving efficiency based on information relating to the driving style.

DriveGreen can be displayed on the Infotainment as follows.

› Press the CAR button in Infotainment and then tap the function surfaces on the screen → **DriveGreen**.

A driving liquid display
With the driving is fluid, the display is located in the middle (near the green dot). When accelerating, the display moves down, and upwards when braking.

B "Green leaf"
The greener the leaf, the more economic the driving style. With less economical driving, the leaf is presented without any green colouring or it can be completely hidden.

C bar graph
The higher the green bars, the more economical the driving style. Each bar shows the driving efficiency in 5-second steps, the current bar is on the left.

D scoring (0 - 100)
The higher the indicated value, the more economical the driving style. When you tap the function surface D, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is displayed.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the assessment from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

E the average fuel consumption from the start
When you tap the E function surface, a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the overview of the average fuel consumption from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

F symbols
The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

ECO Economical driving style

The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.

The journey does not take place in a free-flowing manner, avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking

4 Recommended gear

Tips for economical driving
Tap on the B leave to display tips for economical driving.

Note
When resetting the single-trip memory "Since start", the average consumption E, the driving assessment D, and the diagram C are also reset.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Driving Tips

Only drive on roads and terrain that correspond to the vehicle parameters» page 243, *Technical data*.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can cope with the conditions and the terrain.

WARNING
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Too high a speed or an erroneous manoeuvre may cause serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These items can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. to parts of the fuel or brake system).

Driving through water

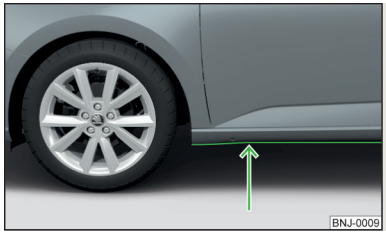


Fig. 202
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore, always determine the depth of the water before driving through water. The water level must not go above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 202.
› Drive at no more than walking pace, otherwise a wave may form in front of the vehicle, which could cause the water to enter into the vehicle's systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine).
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- If water gets into the vehicle's systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine) it can cause serious damage to the vehicle!
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. A vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

Introduction

WARNING

- The assistance systems only serve to support and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
- The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Only enable, disable or set the assistance systems so that you have the car fully under control in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Radar sensor



Fig. 203
Installation location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! on page 172 first.

The radar sensor (hereinafter on referred to as sensor) uses electromagnetic waves to capture the traffic situation ahead of the vehicle » Fig. 203.

The sensor is part of the ACC» page 185 and Front Assist» page 190systems.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.
- The sensor cover is soiled (e.g. with mud, snow etc.).
- The area in front of and around the sensor cover is obscured (e.g. by labels, auxiliary headlights etc.).
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is covered or dirty, the corresponding message appears in the instrument cluster display for the ACC system» page 190, *Malfunctions*or Front Assist system » page 192, *Malfunctions*.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC system and Front Assist system» page 187, » page 192. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- A collision or damage in the front or lower area of the vehicle could affect the sensor function - there is risk of accident! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the area in front of and around the sensor cover. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

The error display is in Chapter » page 37, *Warning lights*.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 172, ! in section *Introduction*.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

ESC improves vehicle stability in critical driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle starts to skid) by the braking the individual wheels to maintain the direction.

If there is a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thereby, it helps the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

An ABS intervention can be noticed through **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** and distinct noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not pump the brakes or lift off the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

MSR counteracts the tendency of the drive wheels to lock during downshifts or sudden deceleration (e.g. on icy or an otherwise slippery road surface).

If the drive wheels should lock, then the engine speed is automatically increased. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Traction control (TCS)



Fig. 204
Key for the TCS system

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

The TCS prevents the drive wheels from spinning. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thereby, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Deactivation

› Press the » Fig. 204 button.
› **or:** On Infotainment, press the CAR button, then tap the function surface → **ESC system: → ASR off**.

During **deactivation** the warning light **lights up** in the instrument cluster **and** an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activation

› Press the » Fig. 204 button.
› **or:** On Infotainment, press the CAR button, then tap the function surface → **ESC system: → Activated**.

During **activation extinguished** the warning light is and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

▸ When driving with snow chains.
▸ When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
▸ When “rocking a car free” when it has become stuck.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes a spinning wheel if required and transfers the drive power force to the other drive wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS+ is an extension to the electronic differential lock (EDL). The XDS+ responds to the release of pressure on the wheels during fast cornering by means of a braking intervention on the wheel on the inside of the corner on the driven axle. By decelerating the individual wheels, this prevents the vehicle from over-steering or understeering. This has a positive effect on the driving stability and steerability of the vehicle.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very rapid depression of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

When driving on slopes, Hill Start Assist (hereinafter referred to simply as the system) allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without the vehicle rolling downhill on its own.

The vehicle is braked by the system for about 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal.

The system is active as of a 5% slope, if the driver door is closed. The system is only ever active on slopes when starting off in forward or reverse.

Multicollision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 173 first.

MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision by means of automatic braking interventions and to stabilise the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

✓ There was a front, side and rear-end collision of a certain severity.
✓ The impact speed was greater than approx. 10 km/h.
✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Parking aid (ParkPilot)

Introduction

The parking aid (hereinafter simply referred to as the system) uses acoustic signals on the Infotainment screen when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 172, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. There is a danger that such objects or people may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. There is a danger that obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, etc., in front of or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 205 *on page 176* clean and free from snow and ice, and do not cover them with any objects of any kind, otherwise the functioning of the system may be restricted.
- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the functioning of the system may be impaired - “incorrect recognition of obstacles”.
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 175 first.

› In the Infotainment, in menu CAR, tap in the function surface ⚙ → **Parking and manoeuvring**.

- *ParkPilot* – Settings for the parking aid
  - **Activate automatically** – Activate/deactivate the compact parking aid display (when driving forward)
  - **Front volume** – Adjust the volume of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Front tone setting** – Setting the pitch of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Rear volume** – Set the volume level of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Rear tone setting** – Setting the pitch of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Entertainment fading while parking** – Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid

Operation

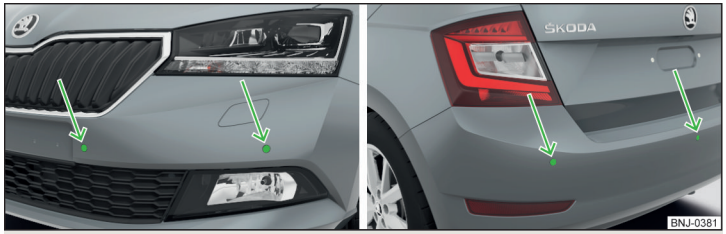


Fig. 205 **Installation location of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front/rear**

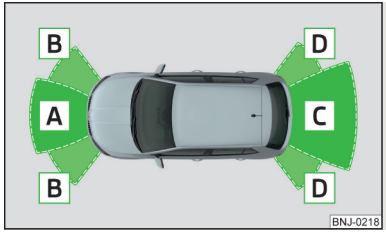


Fig. 206
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 175 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment,, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 205.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions are possible » Fig. 206.

- Variant 1: warns of obstacles in areas C, D.
- Variant 2: warns of obstacles in areas A, B, C, D.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 206	Variant 1 (3 sensors)	Variant 2 (7 sensors)
A	-	120
B	-	60
C	160	160
D	60	60

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of approx. 30 cm a continuous tone starts to sound - danger area.

The acoustic signals can be set in the Infotainment system » page 175.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, only areas A and B » Fig. 206 are active in the system.

Note
The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

Display Infotainment screen

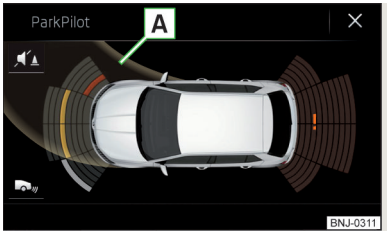


Fig. 207
Screen display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 175 first.

Function surfaces and warnings » Fig. 207

A Road display.

✕ / ⮌	Depending on the Infotainment type: Switching off park assistant display.
/	Switching audible parking signals on/off.
	Change to rear-view camera display .
	There is an obstacle in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). Stop moving in the direction of the obstacle!
	There is an obstacle in the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
	An obstacle is located outside of the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
!	System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

Road display
The road display A » Fig. 207 indicates the road on which the vehicle would take the current steering wheel and shift / selector lever position.

The shift lever is in the neutral position and the gear selector is in mode **N**. the road display is at the front.

Activation / deactivation



Fig. 208
System key (option 2)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 175 first.

Activation
The system is activated when the reverse gear is engaged, or, in vehicles with **variant 2**, also by pressing the button » Fig. 208.

When activating, an alarm sounds and the symbol illuminates in the button.

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **variant 2**, the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the button or at a speed above 15 km/h (the symbol in the button goes out).

Displaying an error
If a warning signal sounds for 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the button at a speed of below 15 km/h.

Automatic system activation when moving forward



Fig. 209
Infotainment screen: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 175 first.

The automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km/h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment screen » Fig. 209.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment system » page 175.

Rear traffic alert and wizard for “Blind spot”Monitoring

Introduction



Fig. 210
Installation location of the radar sensors

The Rear Traffic Alert and Wizard for “blind spot” monitoring works based on the information from the radar sensors in the rear bumper » Fig. 210. The radar sensors are not visible from the outside.

Rear Traffic Alert
The Rear Traffic Alert (hereinafter referred to as system) warns when leaving a parking space from a transverse parking space about any approaching vehicles.

Wizard for “blind spot”monitoring
The wizard for“blind spot monitoring” (hereafter referred to as system) draws attention to vehicles travelling in the same direction in the next lane in the so-called blind spots.

The “blind spot” is an area that is not easily visible in a rear-view mirror or even directly from the vehicle.

WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 172, ! in section *Introduction*.

WARNING

- In the case of a collision or damage to the rear of the vehicle, the function of the systems may be affected - risk of accident! Have the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the sensor area - the function of the systems could be limited.
  - Remove snow, ice and such obstacles from the sensor environment immediately.

WARNING

The wizard for “blind spot”monitoring is limited by physical and system-related limits. Therefore, in the following situations the system can be delayed in drawing attention (or not at all) to a vehicle in the next land.
- When a vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.
- When passing through a very sharp curve or a roundabout.

CAUTION

- If a trailer or other accessory is to be connected to the trailer socket, then the two systems are not available.
- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - “failure to recognise a vehicle”.
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Rear Traffic Alert- Operation

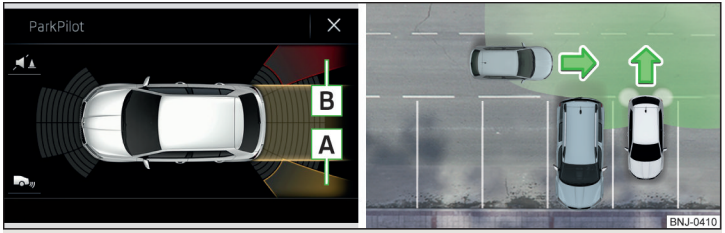


Fig. 211 **Infotainment screen: warning indicator / driving situation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 178 first.

With the ignition switched on, the area next to and behind the vehicle is monitored by the radar sensors of the system. If an approaching vehicle is detected from the rear of the vehicle » Fig. 211, the system warns of this fact.

Warning - vehicles with parking aid
You will hear a continuous tone and one of the following warning levels appears on the Infotainment screen » Fig. 211.

A An oncoming vehicle is detected. Do not continue driving backwards and check around the vehicle.

B A vehicle in the collision region is detected. Do not continue reversing STOP.

Warning - vehicles without parking sensors
An acoustic signal is sounded and information for the driver to observe the traffic behind is shown in the instrument cluster.

! CAUTION
If a collision risk is detected, no automatic system-related braking takes place.

Wizard for “Blind Spot”Monitoring - Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 178 first.

At a speed over 15 km/h, the area alongside and behind the vehicle is monitored by the system. At the same time, the distance and the difference in speed between your vehicle and the other vehicles in the monitored area can be measured.

When driving, the sensors monitor an area to the left and right to the extent of a normal lane width.

If a vehicle is detected in the “blind spot” area, the system indicates this vehicle by the warning light in the exterior mirror.

System limitation
The system is unable to recognise the specific lane width by means of sensors. Therefore this can e.g. in the following cases respond to a vehicle in a further lane.
- When driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
- Driving around a bend.

The system may also respond to objects on the roadside such as crash barriers, noise barriers or similar objects.

Wizard for “Blind Spot”Monitoring - driving situations and warnings

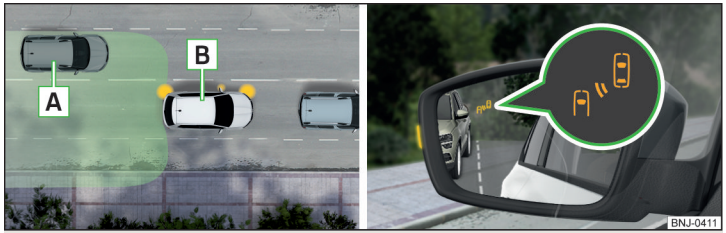


Fig. 212 **Driving situation / indicator light in the left outside mirror indicates the driving situation**

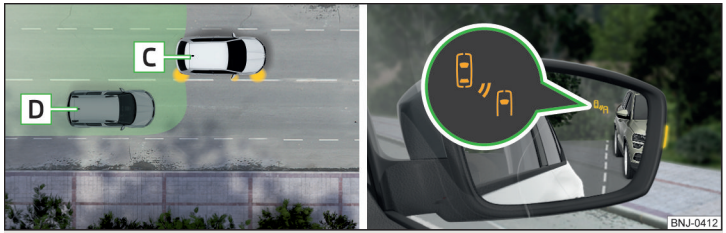


Fig. 213 **Driving situation / indicator light in the right outside mirror indicates the driving situation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 178 first.

In the following situations, the indicator light in the outside mirror indicates a vehicle in the “blind spot”.

- Your vehicle B is being overtaken by vehicle A » Fig. 212.
- Your vehicle C is overtaking vehicle D at a speed of max. 10 km higher » Fig. 213. If the speed during the overtaking is even higher, then there is no warning by the warning light.

The warning display is always in the exterior mirror on the side of the vehicle where a vehicle is detected in the “blind spot”.

The greater the speed difference between the two vehicles, the earlier the warning (by means of the warning light) regarding the vehicle that is overtaking you takes place.

Two warning levels

light up - a vehicle has been detected in the “blind spot”.

flash - a vehicle has been detected in the “blind spot” and **the turn signal is switched on**.

Note

The brightness of warning light is dependent on the vehicle lighting setting. With the low or high beam on the brightness of the light will be lower.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 178 first.

The activation or deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of the following ways.

- In the instrument cluster display » page 50, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.
- In the infotainment system, in menu CAR / → → → **Driver assistance** (applies to the wizard for “blind spot” monitoring).
- In the infotainment system, in menu CAR / → → → **Parking and manoeuvring** (Applies to Rear Traffic Alerts).

After switching off and switching on the ignition, depending on the setting prior to switching off the ignition, the systems remains activated / deactivated.

Note

During activation of the “blind spot” monitoring wizard, the warning lights light up in the two exterior mirrors.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 178 first.

If the systems are not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty

If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean or remove the obstructing object from the sensor environment » Fig. 210 *on page 178*.

Systems unavailable

If the systems are unavailable, a message regarding unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the systems are still not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

System fault

In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Reversing camera

Introduction

The reversing camera (hereinafter the system) helps the driver to park and manoeuvre the vehicle by displaying the area behind the vehicle on the Infotainment screen (hereinafter only referred to as the screen).

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 172, in section *Introduction*.
- The camera may not be soiled or obscured, otherwise the system function will be significantly affected - there is a risk of accident. For information on cleaning » page 205.

CAUTION

- The camera image is distorted by contrast with eyesight. For this reason, the screen display is only of limited use for estimating distances to vehicles behind.
- Some items, such as narrow columns, chain link fences or lattice, may not be represented adequately in terms of screen resolution.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Note

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. The spraying is carried out automatically when the rear window is sprayed.

Operation

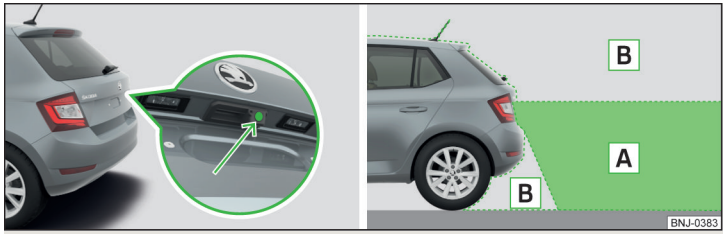


Fig. 214 **Installation location of the camera / scanned area behind the vehicle**

Read and observe and on page 181 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the boot lid handle » Fig. 214.

Area behind the vehicle » Fig. 214

A Detection range of the camera
B Area outside the detection range of the camera

The system can assist the driver when parking and manoeuvring under the following basic conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 15 km/h.
✓ The area behind the vehicle is clearly visible.
✓ The selected parking / manoeuvring area is clear and even.

Note

- The screen display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol button P » Fig. 208 *on page 177*.
- After disengaging reverse gear, automatic screen display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2) » page 176.

Guidelines and function surfaces

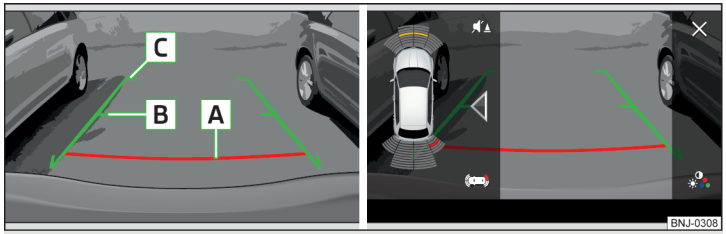


Fig. 215 **Infotainment screen: Orientation lines / function interfaces**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

On the screen, orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 215

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is about 100 cm.
C The distance is about 200 cm.

The distance may vary slightly depending on the load of the vehicle and the road inclination.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces » Fig. 215

✕ / ⮌ Depending on the Infotainment type: Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle
Screen settings – brightness, contrast, colour
/ Switching audible parking signals on/off
◀ / ▶ Enabling and reduced park assistance display
Change to park assistance display

! CAUTION

The objects shown on the screen can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.
- Protruding objects, such as the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal. The status where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 172, ! in section *Introduction*.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Operation

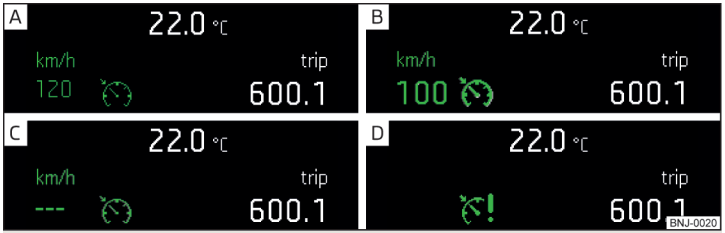


Fig. 216 **MAXI DOT display (monochrome): Examples of status displays the CCS**



Fig. 217 **Segment display: Examples of status displays the CCS**

Read and observe ! on page 182 first.

CCS status displays » Fig. 216, » Fig. 217

A Speed set, but control is inactive.
B Control is active.
C No speed set.
D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for starting the control

✓ The CCS is activated.
✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
✓ The current speed is higher than 20 km/h.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

! WARNING

If the engine output or engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, the driver must assume control of the accelerator and brake pedals!

Operation description

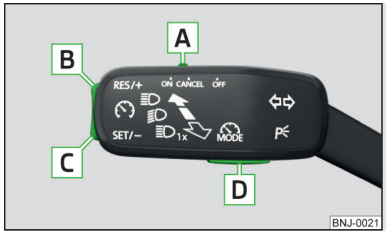


Fig. 218 **Cruise control system controls**

Read and observe ! on page 182 first.

Overview of the control elements of the CCS » Fig. 218

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Start control / reduce speed
D	**MODE**	Switch between GRA and Speed Limiter

[a] If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

Once the controls are activated, the CCS maintains the vehicle at the set speed; the indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Controls are automatically interrupted if any of the following occur.

▶ The brake pedal is operated.
▶ When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
▶ Through an airbag deployment.
▶ By pressing button D » Fig. 218.

! WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being enabled unintentionally.
- The control does not resume if the set speed is too high for the existing traffic conditions.

Note

- During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.
- By pressing the button D » Fig. 218 during the control procedure this is cancelled and the Speed Limiter is activated.

Speed limiter

Introduction

The Speed Limiter limits the maximum driving speed to the set speed limit.

The speed limit can only be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The condition in which the speed limiter prevents a set speed limit from being exceeded is referred to hereinafter as **Regulation**.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 172, in section *Introduction*.

Operation

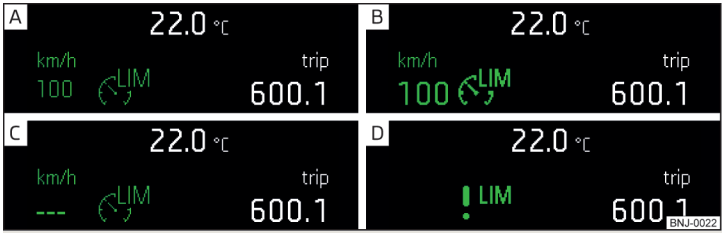


Fig. 219 **MAXI DOT display (monochrome): Examples of Speed Limiter status displays**



Fig. 220 **Segment display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 184 first.

Status displays of the speed limiter » Fig. 219, » Fig. 220

A Speed limit set, but regulation is inactive.
B Control is active.
C No speed limit set.
D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for starting the control

✓ The Speed Limiter is activated.
✓ The current speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Operation description

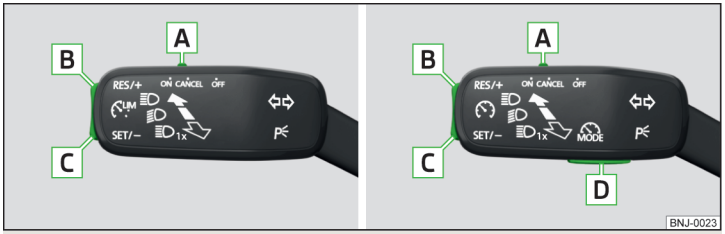


Fig. 221 **Operating elements of the speed limiter: Vehicle with Speed Limiter / vehicle with GRA and Speed Limiter**

Read and observe ! on page 184 first.

Overview of the control elements of the speed limiter » Fig. 221

A	**ON**	Activate Speed Limiter (regulation deactivated) For vehicles with GRA and Speed Limiter, the GRA is activated by the switch in the **ON** position by being adjusted. The activation of the speed limiter occurs only after pressing the button D.
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Speed Limiter disable (set limit delete)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again [a]/ increase speed - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
C	**SET/–**	Start control/ reduce speed - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
D	**MODE**	Switching between CCS and speed limiter

[a] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

After starting the system, the current speed is set as the speed limit, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Exceeding the speed limit during the regulation
If, during the setting, it is necessary to exceed the speed limit (e.g. to overtake), the accelerator pedal must be pressed fully.

When exceeding the speed limit (e.g. driving down a hill), an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The regulation is resumed once the speed has fallen below the set limit.

Note
By pressing the button D during the control this is cancelled and the CCS is activated.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

The Adaptive Cruise Control (hereinafter referred to as ACC) maintains the set speed and at the same time the distance to the vehicle ahead without the accelerator or brake pedal being pressed.

The front of the vehicle and the distance to the vehicle ahead is monitored by a radar sensor » page 172.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

! WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 172, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always be ready to take over the operation of the accelerator and brake pedal.
- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

! WARNING
For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.
- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- Driving into “sharp” corners or in steep gradients / on steep inclines.

WARNING (Continued)

- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railway tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.
- The control automatically cancels the engagement of the brake supportive assistance systems (e.g. ESC) or when the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

› In the Infotainment, in menu CAR, tap in the function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *ACC (adaptive cruise control)* - Setting for the ACC
  - **Driving progr.:** - Sets the vehicle acceleration when the ACC is activated
  - **Last distance selected** - Last selected distance level on/off
  - **Distance:** - Set the distance to the vehicles ahead

Operation

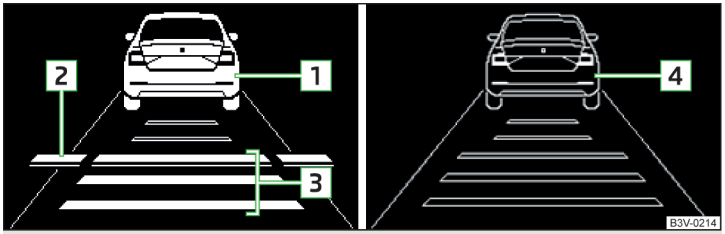


Fig. 222 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC displays**

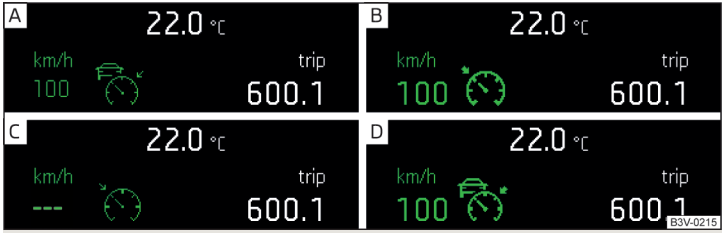


Fig. 223 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

The ACC makes it possible to set a speed of 30-160 km/h as well as to set the distance from the vehicles in front.

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 120 m ahead using the radar sensor.

ACC displays » Fig. 222

1 Vehicle detected (control active)
2 Line showing the displacement of the distance when setting » page 188, *Setting the distance*
3 Set distance to the vehicle ahead
4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated)

Status conditions of the ACC » Fig. 223

A Control deactivated.
B Control activated - no vehicle detected.
C Regulation deactivated - no speed stored.
D Control activated (vehicle detected).

Note to reduce speed
If the delay of the ACC is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the display shows a message to engage the brake pedal.

Note
Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Automatic stopping and starting

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a complete stop and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a complete stop
If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a complete stop.

Starting to drive again after a holding period
As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be controlled. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

Summary of operations

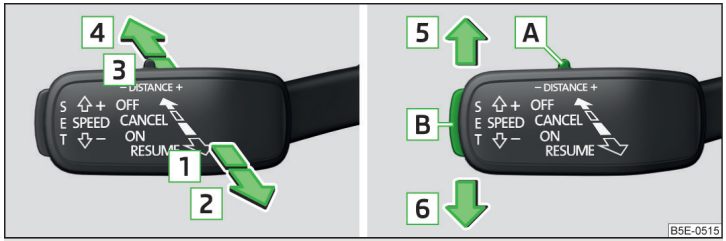


Fig. 224 **Operating lever**

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 224

1	ON	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
2	RESUME	Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
4	OFF	Deactivate ACC
5	SPEED +	Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
6	SPEED –	Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time
A	– DISTANCE +	Set proximity level
B	SET	Start control / reduce speed in increments of 1 km/h

If the lever is set from the position OFF directly into the sprung position RESUME the current speed is stored and the control process is started.

Start control

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The ACC is activated.
✓ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, the second gear or a higher gear is selected and the current speed is greater than 30 km/h.
✓ On vehicles with **automatic transmission** the selector lever is in the position **D/S** or in the Tiptronic position and the current speed is higher than 2 km / h.

Start control

› Press the button **SET** » Fig. 224 *on page 187* .
› **or:** Set the lever into the sprung position **RESUME** » Fig. 224 *on page 187* .

The ACC takes the current driving speed and performs the control, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

If the control is started by moving the lever to the position **RESUME** and should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

Note

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Stop/resume control

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

Stop control

› Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 224 *on page 187* .
› **or:** Apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

› Start control » page 188, *Start control*.

Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch pedal is held down for longer than 30 s or the TCS is deactivated.

Setting/changing the desired speed

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever » Fig. 224 *on page 187*.

Setting/changing the speed by increments of 10 km/h at a time (SPEED) - requirements

✓ The ACC is activated.

Increasing/reducing the speed by increments of 1 km/h at a time (RESUME/SET - requirements

✓ The ACC is activated.
✓ Vehicle control takes place.

Changing the speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - requirements

✓ The ACC is activated.
✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 188.
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored by pressing the button again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h.

Setting the distance

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

The ACC allows you to set five distance steps to the preceding vehicle.

The distance is adjustable in a range of 1 to 3.6 s.

Adjusting the distance in the Infotainment system

› In Infotainment in the *ACC* the **Distance:** menu item and set the distance » page 186, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Adjust the distance with the lever

› Set the switch **DISTANCE** Adjust in the spring-tensioned position – or + » Fig. 224 *on page 187*.

The display of the instrument cluster shows line 2 » Fig. 222 *on page 186*, which indicates the proximity.

› Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust the line 2 to the desired distance.

Note

If the distance is changed in the Infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.

Special driving conditions

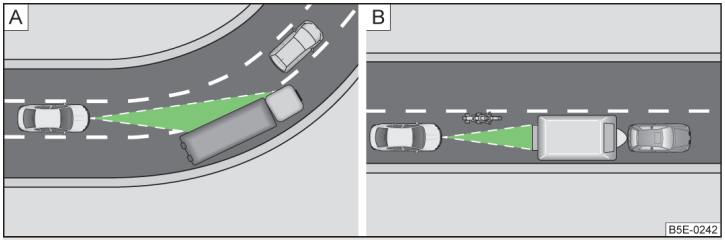


Fig. 225 **Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side**

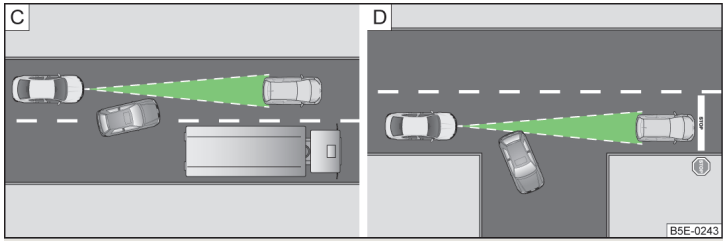


Fig. 226 **Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles**

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

The following (and similar) situations require special attention and possibly the intervention of the driver (braking, accelerating etc.).

When cornering

When driving into or driving out of long corners, it could be that a vehicle is travelling in the adjacent lane and is scanned by the radar » Fig. 225 - A. The host vehicle is then controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side

A narrow or offset vehicle driving can only be recognized by the ACC if this is located in the scanning range of the radar » Fig. 225 - B.

Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small distance » Fig. 226 - C may not be detected by ACC in good time.

Stationary vehicles

The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 226 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special body parts

Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Overtaking and towing

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

When overtaking
When your vehicle is being controlled at a speed that is lower than the set speed and the turn signal is operated, ACC assesses this situation as meaning that the driver wishes to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle changes to the overtaking lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button CANCEL on the lever » Fig. 224 *on page 187*.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or if another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, ACC control is set with a lower rate. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! on page 185 first.

If ACC is not available, the warning light ! appears in the display of the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is shown.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean the sensor or remove the obstacle » page 172.

ACC not available
If the ACC is unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If ACC continues to be unavailable, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

ACC fault
With an ACC fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Introduction

The Front Assist (hereinafter referred to as "system") warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor» page 172.

! WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 172, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

! CAUTION
In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 190 first.

› In the Infotainment, in menu CAR, tap in the function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *Front Assist (ambient traffic monitor. sys.)* – Set the assist system for distance monitoring to the vehicles ahead
  - **Active** – Activate/deactivate the assis system
  - **Advance warning** - Activate/deactivate and set the distance level at which a warning occurs
  - **Display distance warning** - Activate/deactivate distance warnings

Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 190 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.
▶ Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
▶ Warns you of an impending collision.

▶ Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
▶ If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic braking action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.
✓ The system is activated.
✓ TCS is activated » page 174.
✓ The vehicle is travelling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

Note
The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in “sharp ”curves or with an ESC engagement » page 173.

Distance warning

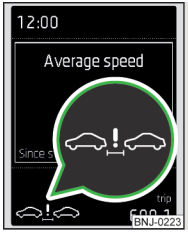


Fig. 227
Instrument cluster display: Distance warning

Read and observe ! and ! on page 190 first.

The display of the distance warning is for vehicles with MAXI DOT display.

If a safe distance from the vehicle ahead is undershot, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 227.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking



Fig. 228
Instrument cluster display: Warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 190 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
If there is a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of about 5 km/h to 30 km/h, the system triggers an automatic braking.

With automatic braking, the warning light » Fig. 228appears in the display.

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the warning light » Fig. 228appears in the display and you will hear an acoustic signal.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
▶ If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 210 km/h.
▶ If there is a risk of collision with a stationary obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 85 km/h.

With a warning the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle is to be avoided!

Acute alert
If the driver does not react to the advance warning when in danger of a collision with a moving obstacle, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking
If the driver does not respond to acute warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle.

If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by steering intervention.

Brake assist
If the driver brakes inadequate with an impending collision, the system automatically increases braking force.

The braking assistance only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Deactivation/activation

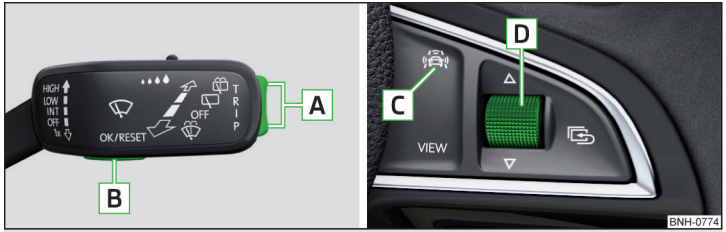


Fig. 229 **Buttons/dial: on the operating lever/the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 190 first.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » !.

On vehicles with the MAXI DOT display, the system can be activated/deactivated in the main menu » page 50, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with segment display

Button » Fig. 229	Action	Operation
A	Hold up / down	Show Front Assist menu item
B	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with multi-function steering wheel

Button / dial » Fig. 229	Action	Operation
C	Press	Show Front Assist menu item
D	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Disable / enable and setting in the Infotainment
In Infotainment, the entire system or the function advance warning and distance warning can be deactivated/activated» page 190, *Settings in Infotainment*.

If the distance-warning function was deactivated before switching off the ignition, it remains deactivated after switching on the ignition.

! WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.
- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning or a system action was taken.
- When on a truck, or a car ferry service or similar.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 190 first.

If the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacle » Fig. 203 *on page 172*.

System unavailable
If the system is unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Fatigue detection system

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter simply the system) advises the driver to take a break from driving when driver fatigue can be detected based on the driver's steering behaviour.

The system evaluates the steering behaviour at speeds of 60-200 km/h.

Conditions under which a break from driving is detected by the system

- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment menu CAR → → → **Driver assistance** menu.

Pause recommendation

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster and a message about detected fatigue. An audible signal is also emitted.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 172, in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system can evaluate the steering behaviour incorrectly and therefore falsely display a break recommendation.
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter known as "system") monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard » page 41.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed tyre pressure and this pressure values are stored in the system.

The tyre pressure valuesare always stored in the system, if one of the following events is present.

- Change of tyre pressure values.
- Change one or more wheels.
- Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- The warning light in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 172, in section *Introduction*.
- The correct tyre pressure values is always the driver's responsibility. The tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 217.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid loss of tyre pressure, e.g. in the event of a sudden puncture.
- Before storing the tyre pressures they must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 217. If incorrect pressure values are storedthe system may not warn even with a tyre pressure that is too low.

CAUTION

To ensure proper system function, the tyre pressure values must be stored every 10,000 km or 1x a year.

Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display

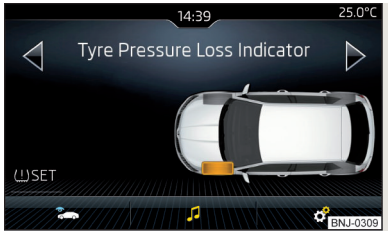


Fig. 230
Button for storage / screen display example: a tire pressure change at the front left is shown

Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

Procedure for storing the tyre pressure values

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure.
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› In the Infotainment, in menu CAR, tap in the function surface Tap → **Vehicle status**.
› Use the function interfaces ◁ ▷ select the *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator* menu item.
› Tap the functional surface **SET** interface» Fig. 230.

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the screen.

A message on the screen informs you about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When a warning light in the instrument cluster appears, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment » Fig. 230.

Storing the tire pressure values using the key



Fig. 231
Button for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the symbol key » Fig. 231 on the button and hold.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

An acoustic signal sounds and the warning light goes out, indicating that the tyre pressure values have been stored.

› Release the symbol key .

Towing device and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

The maximum trailer load is dependent on the engine and the vehicle equipment. The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, the COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other data (e.g. shown onthe nameplate of the hitch) on provides information about the test values of the device .

WARNING

- Check that the ball head is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before starting any journey.
- When the knee-joint bar is not used and properly secured in the receiving shaft, it is damaged or incomplete, this must not be used - there is a risk of an accident.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing equipment in any way.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

Description

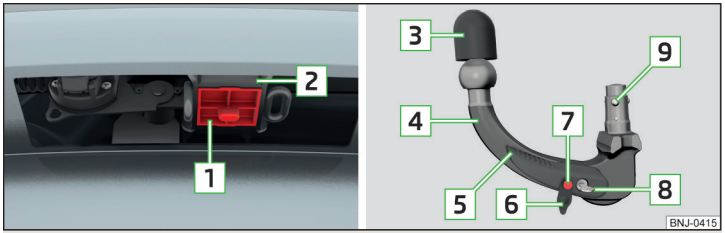


Fig. 232 **Carrier for the towing device / tow bar**

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

The tow bar is detachable and is located in the storage compartment for the spare wheel.

Support for the towing device and tow bar » Fig. 232

1 Cover for the mounting recess
2 Mounting recess
3 Dust cap
4 Ball head
5 Operating lever
6 Lock cap
7 Release pin
8 Key
9 Locking ball

Adjusting the ready position

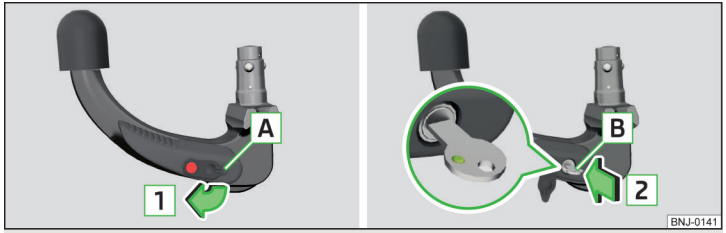


Fig. 233 **Remove cap from the lock / insert key into the lock**

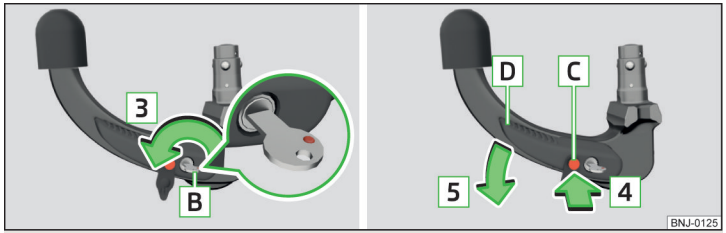


Fig. 234 **Lock unlock / press release bolt and lever and push**

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

The tow bar can only be fitted if it is in the ready position.

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 233.
› Insert the key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2, so that its green marker points upward.
› Turn key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 234.
› Push in the release bolt C in the direction of arrow 4 until it stops and simultaneously press the operating lever D in the direction of arrow 5 until it stops.

The operating lever D remains locked in this position.

Check the setting of the standby position

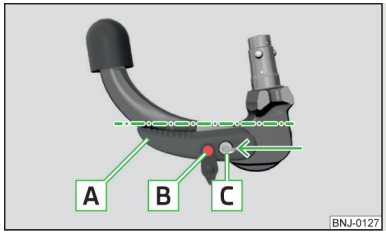


Fig. 235
Ready position

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 235
✓ The operating lever A is locked in the lower position.
✓ The release bolts B can be moved.
✓ The red mark on the key C is pointing upwards.

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed or turned into a different position. The tow bar is thus set ready for installation.

Assembling the bar ball - Step 1

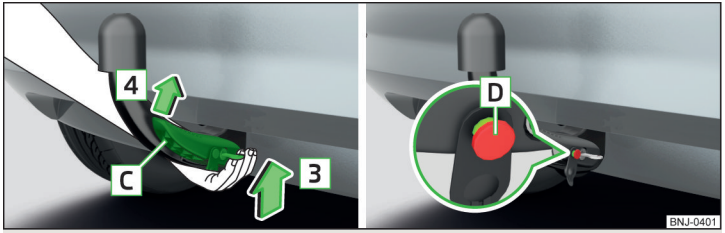


Fig. 236 **Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state**

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

Preparing installation
› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 1 in a downwards direction» Fig. 232 *on page 195*.
› Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 195, *Adjusting the ready position*.

Fitting
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 236 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 3 until you hear it click into place » !.

The operating lever C **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow 4 and the release pin D pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If the operating lever C does not turn automatically, or if the release pin D does not pop out, remove the tow bar from the mounting recess by turning the operating lever C downwards as far as it can go. Clean the contact surfaces on the tow bar and the mounting recess.

WARNING

- Carefully remove the cap for the mounting recess 1 - there is a risk of hand injury.
- Keep your hands outside the operating lever's range of motion when attaching the ball head – there is a risk of finger injury.
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever upwards forcibly to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball head is not attached correctly.

Assembling the bar ball - Step 2

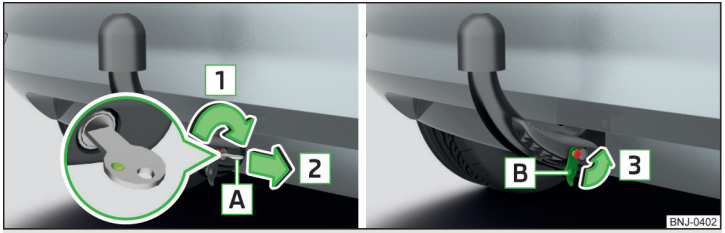


Fig. 237 **Secure the lock and remove key / place cap on lock**

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the green marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 237.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Fit the cap B on the lock in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 197.

WARNING

After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key. The tow bar must not be operated with the key inserted.

Check proper fitting

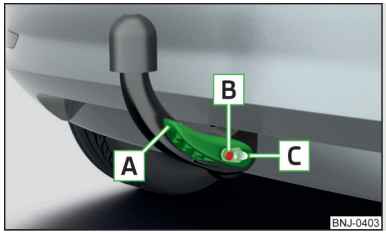


Fig. 238
Correctly secured ball rod

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

Correctly secured ball rod » Fig. 238

✓ The tow bar must sit securely in the receiving shaft. There must be no play when “shaken” roughly.
✓ Operating lever A is located as far up as possible.
✓ The release pin B is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
✓ The key is removed and the cap C attached to the lock.

Removing the bar ball - Step 1

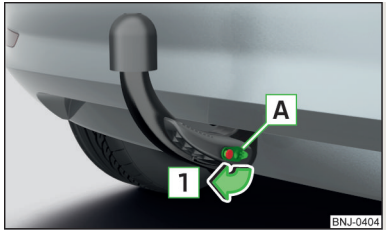


Fig. 239
Remove the cap from the lock

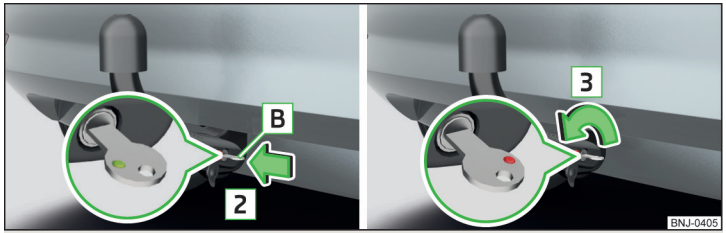


Fig. 240 **Insert the key into the lock / unlock the lock**

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

No trailer or other accessory is connected to the tow bar. We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 239.
› Insert the key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2, so that its green marker points upward » Fig. 240.
› Turn the key in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking points upwards.

Removing the bar ball - Step 2

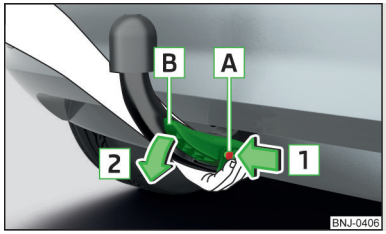


Fig. 241
Release tow bar

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

Removing

› Grasp the tow bar from **below** » Fig. 241.
› Push in the release bolt A in the direction of arrow 1 until it stops and simultaneously press the operating lever B in the direction of arrow 2 until it stops.

The ball head is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

› Place the cap 1 » Fig. 232 *on page 195* onto the mounting recess.

If the operating lever B is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball head is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The knee-joint bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is installed» page 195, *Adjusting the ready position.*

The knee-joint bar must be cleaned before storing in the box with the vehicle tool always.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball head to remain unsecured in the boot. This can cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

! CAUTION

- Place the tow bar in the standby position, with the key upwards, and store in the box - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not step on it).

Vertical load with mounted accessories

Read and observe ! on page 195 first.

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The **maximum length** of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) may not exceed **70 cm**.

The permissible total weight of the installed accessory, including its load, corresponds to the maximum trailer load on trailers.

This value applies if the center of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases (e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half).

CAUTION

Never exceed the permissible **total weight** of the accessories incl. load and **maximum length** of the accessories – There is a risk of damage to the towing device.

Note

We recommend that you use the accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Using hitch

Trailer (accessory) connect and disconnect

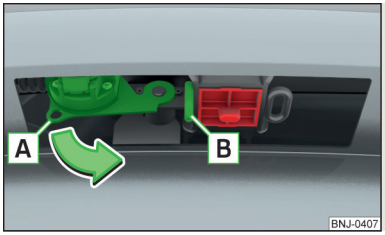


Fig. 242
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Connecting / disconnecting

› Fit the ball rod.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 242.
› Remove the protective cap 3 » Fig. 232 *on page 195*.
› Place the trailer (the accessory) onto the tow ball.
› Open the socket cap and insert the plug of the trailer (accessories) into the 13-pin socket A » Fig. 242. (If the trailer / accessories have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories).
› Suspend the breakaway cable of the trailer at the safety eyelet B (the breakaway cable must **sag** in all trailer settings in view of the vehicle).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors

You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer using the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer (accessory) is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users. Set the range of the headlights » page 60.

Power supply of the trailer / accessory power system

In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory), the trailer (accessories) is supplied with power from the vehicle (with ignition switched on and off).

With the engine switched off, the vehicle battery is discharged by the connected consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery, the power supply to the trailer (accessories) is interrupted.

WARNING

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) may result in an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- Do not make any adjustments to the electrical installation of the vehicle and the trailer (accessories) - risk of an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- After the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory) the trailer / accessory lights should be checked for function.
- Never use the securing eye to tow - The is a risk of accident!

CAUTION

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) can lead to the inoperability of the vehicle electronics.
- The total power consumption of all the connected loads to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.

Loading a trailer

Correct the **tyre inflation pressure** on the vehicle for “full load”» page 217.

Distribution of the cargo
Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the load from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive with particular caution if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

! WARNING
An unsecured load can adversely affect stability and driving safety significantly - there is a risk of accident!

Trailer load

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances.

Permissible trailer load - Fabia

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) at gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/44 kW MPI	MG	800	540
1.0 l/55 kW MPI	MG	800	540
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	MG	1000	560
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1100	560
	DSG	1100	580
1.6 l/66 kW MPI	MG	1100	550
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	AG	1100	570

Permissible trailer load - Fabia Combi

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) at gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/55 kW MPI	MG	800	550
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	MG	1000	570
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1100	570
	DSG	1100	590
1.6 l/66 kW MPI	MG	1100	560
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	AG	1100	580

Towing a trailer

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 100 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from “swaying” by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

CAUTION

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

The alarm is triggered if, with a vehicle with activated anti-theft alarm (hereinafter only warning system), the electrical connection to the trailer (accessory) is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer (accessory) is coupled or uncoupled » page 56.

Conditions for including a trailer (accessory) in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer (accessory) is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is not equipped with LED taillights.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when using accessories or carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Compliance with these guidelines and instructions is in the interest of the roadworthiness and technical condition of your vehicle.

WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist. Work carried out incorrectly (including work on the electronic components and their software) can result in malfunctions - there is a risk of accident and, potentially, increased wear on parts!
- We recommend that you use only ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- Do not use any products which have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, even though these may be products with a type approval or which have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with the intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA partner. He or she will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, changing the battery or similar).

ŠKODA service partner

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

All ŠKODA service partners work according to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and to the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts comply wholly with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA original parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with materials defect liability under the law unless otherwise agreed in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

You should note the following if you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch the suitability of other products for your vehicle, despite the fact that some products may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with materials defect liability legislation, unless otherwise agreed in the purchase contract or in any other agreements.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

! WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with a Genuine Accessories spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the boot lid, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries!

- The vehicle can only be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the corresponding spoiler on the boot lid.
- A Genuine Accessories spoiler cannot be fitted to the front bumper either on its own (without a spoiler on the boot lid) or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the boot lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.
- Improperly conducted work on the spoilers of your vehicle may result in malfunction.

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 202 first.

! WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and modifications which have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage, operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of airbag system – there is the risk of an accident and fatal injury.
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can impair the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!

! WARNING

- No changes may be made to airbag system components, the front bumper and the bodywork.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must be replaced.

! WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can impair the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accidents and fatal injuries! The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never drive the vehicle with the inner door panels removed or with openings in the panelling.

Cleaning and care

Introduction

Regular and thorough care helps to retain the value of your vehicle.

The instructions for use on the packaging must be observed when using care products. We recommend that you use ŠKODA Original Accessories care products.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - There is a danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, kitchen scrubbers or similar cleaning products – there is a risk of damaging the paintwork finish.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents - danger of damaging the surface to be cleaned.

Note

We recommend that the vehicle is cleaned and maintained at a ŠKODA service partner.

Car washing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 204 first.

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is frequent washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is also essential to thoroughly clean the underside of the vehicle at the end of the winter.

Washing by hand

Wash the vehicle from top to bottom, with a soft sponge or a wash mitt and plenty of water, and, if necessary, with the appropriate detergents. Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

For wheels, door sills and lower areas of the vehicle use a different sponge.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

Automatic Car Washes

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle (e.g. closing the windows and the tilt/slide roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any special attached parts (e.g. spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc.) it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the wiper blades should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

Pressure Washers

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This particularly applies to instructions regarding the **pressure** and **spraying distance** from the vehicle surface.

WARNING

- Washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency – there is the risk of an accident.
- Take care when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel wells - there is a risk of injury from sharp metal parts!

CAUTION

- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight, do not exert pressure on the body while washing. The temperature of the washing water should be no more than 60 °C max. - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the vehicle paint.
- Before driving through a car wash fold in the exterior mirrors - There is a risk of damage.
- For vehicles with a roof antenna, the antenna rod should be unscrewed before driving through a car wash - there is a risk of damage.

CAUTION

Washing the vehicle with high-pressure cleaners

- Do not wash the foils using pressure washers - there is a risk of damage.

■ Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
■ During cleaning, always keep a sufficiently large spraying distance in particular from the parking sensors, the reversing camera lens, the external decorative and protective plastic parts (e.g. roof racks, spoilers, protective strips) and other vehicle parts made of non-metallic materials, such as rubber hoses or insulation materials – otherwise there is a risk of damage.

Exterior car care

Read and observe ! and ! on page 204 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Paint	Spilled fuel	Clear water, cloth, (clean as soon as possible)
	No water droplets form on the paint	Use hard wax preserve (at least twice a year), apply wax to clean and dry body
	Paint has gone matt	Use polish, then wax (if the polish does not contain any preservative ingredients)
Plastic parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth / sponge, possibly cleaners provided for this purpose
Chrome and anodised parts	Soiling	clear water, cloth, possibly cleaners provided for this purpose, clean then polish with a soft dry cloth
Films	Soiling	soft sponge and mild soap solution[a]
Windows and external mirror glass	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose
Headlights/lights	Soiling	soft sponge and mild soap solution[a]
Reversing camera	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a soft cloth
	Snow/ice	Hand brush / de-icer
Door lock cylinders	Snow/ice	De-icing fluid specifically for that purpose
Wipers / wiper blades	Soiling	Windscreen cleaner, sponge or cloth
Wheels	Soiling	Clear water, then apply appropriate substance

[a] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

The **jack** is maintenance-free. If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

The **towing device** is maintenance-free. Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Protection of cavities
All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected by a layer of long-lasting protective wax applied in the factory.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

Underbody
The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

We recommend having the protective coating — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

Product life of the films
Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films. The films age and become brittle, which is normal; this shall not be considered a fault.

The sunlight may also affect the depth of the film colour.

When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box, etc.), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. due to rockfall from the secured load).

! CAUTION

■ **Vehicle paint**
  ■ Repair damaged areas as soon as possible.
  ■ Matt-painted parts should not be treated with polishes or hard waxes.

- Do not polish in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply polish to door seals or window guides.

- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not use paint polish.
- **Chromed and anodised parts**
  - Do not polish in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- **Films**

  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of film damage.
  - Do not use dirty cloths or sponges for cleaning.
  - Do not use a scraper or other means to remove ice and snow.
  - Do not polish the films
  - Do not use a high pressure cleaner on the films.
- **Rubber seals**
  - Do not treat the door seals and window guides deal with anything - the protective varnish coating could be damaged.
- **Windows and door mirrors**
  - Do not clean the insides of the windows/mirrors with sharp objects - risk of damage to the filaments or the antenna.
  - Do not use a cloth which has been used to polish the body - this could dirty the window and impair visibility.
- **Head / tail lights**
  - Do not wipe head/tail lamps dry, do not use any sharp objects - risk of damage to the protective coating and cracks forming on the headlamp glass covers.
- **Reversing camera**

  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of camera damage.
  - Do not remove snow / ice with warm / hot water.
  - To wash, never use a pressure washer or steam jet.
  - For cleaning, do not use abrasive cleaners.
- **Door lock cylinders**
  - Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!
- **Wheels**
  - Heavy soiling of the wheels can affect the balance of the wheels - the result can be a vibration, which can cause premature wear of the steering.

Removing snow and ice from the windscreens

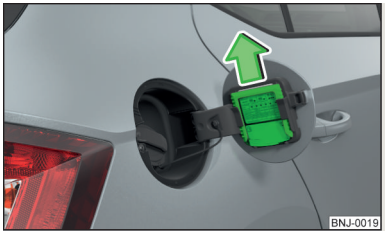


Fig. 243
Installation location of the ice scraper, removing the scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 204 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. This can be on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap and slide the scraper in the direction of arrow » Fig. 243.

! CAUTION

- Move the scraper in one direction only, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the glass surface.
- Do not remove snow / ice on the surface that is soiled (e.g. pea gravel, sand, road salt) - there is a risk of damaging the surface.
- Remove snow / ice carefully, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the labels that have been fitted to the vehicle by the factory.

Caring for the interior

Read and observe ! and ! on page 204 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Suede / Fabric	Dust, surface soiling	Vacuum cleaner
	Soiling (fresh)	Water, slightly damp cotton / wool cloth, if necessary, mild soap solution[a], then wipe off with a soft cloth
	Stubborn stains	Cleaning fluid specifically for this task
	Care (natural leather)	Treat the leather periodically with a leather protecting fluid / use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning
	Care (Alcantara® suede / fabric)	Remove stubborn hair using a “cleaning glove” Remove pills from materials with a brush
Plastic parts	Soiling	Water, slightly damp cloth or sponge, if necessary cleaners specifically for this purpose
Windows	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose
Covers on electrically heated seats	Soiling	Cleaners specifically for this purpose
Seat belts » !	Soiling	soft cloth and mild soap solution[a]

[a] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

! WARNING

- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- **Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® suede / material**
  - Avoid standing for lengthy periods in bright sunlight, and protect the materials by covering to prevent them from fading.
  - Remove fresh stains (e.g. from pens, lipstick, shoe polish and similar) as soon as possible.
  - Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams - risk of damaging the leather!
  - Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
  - Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® suede seat upholstery.
  - Some clothing fabrics (e.g. dark denim) do not have sufficient colour fastness - this could lead to clearly visible discolouration on the upholstery. This is not a defect in the fabric.
  - Sharp objects on garments (e.g. zips, rivets, sharp- edged belts) can damage the upholstery fabrics in the vehicle. Such damage will not be recognised as a justified complaint.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – risk of damage to the dash panel.
- **Windows**
  - Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- **Covers on electrically heated seats**
  - Do not clean either with water or with other liquids - risk of damage to the heating system.
  - Do not dry by switching on the heating.
- **Seat belts**
  - After cleaning the belts, allow them to dry before retracting them.

i Note

During use, the leather and Alcantara® and suede materials may show minor changes (e.g. folds, discolouration).

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

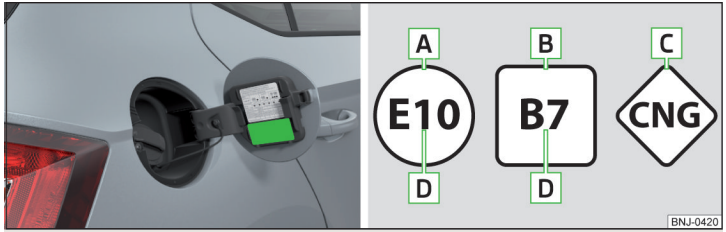


Fig. 244 **Label with prescribed fuel / graphic designation of fuel types**

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 244.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **45 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Graphic name of the fuel types » Fig. 244

- A Unleaded petrol
- B Diesel
- C CNG (compressed natural gas)
- D Percentage of organic

WARNING

The fuel and fuel vapours are explosive - risk to life!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with the intended weather conditions, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will tell you whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in that country and/or whether the manufacturer will sanction operating the vehicle with another fuel.

Petrol Refuelling

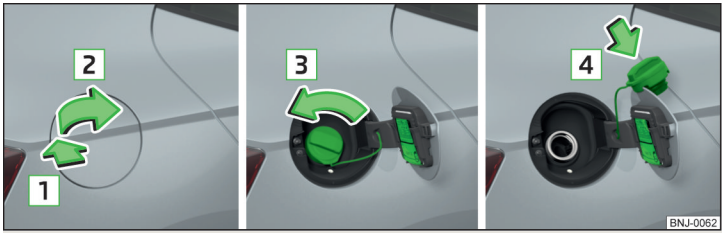


Fig. 245 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 208 first.

Perform the refuelling under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.

✓ The ignition is switched off.

› Press the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 1 and fold in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 245.

› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.

› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.

› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time. Do not continue refuelling.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages 3.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe ! and ! on page 208 first.

The correct fuel for the vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 244 *on page 208*.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** containing **maximum** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Unleaded petrol must correspond to European Standard **EN 228** (in Germany DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 91 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95).

Unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON/ROZ
We recommend using petrol **95** RON.

Optionally, the petrol **91, 92** or **93** RON can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

Specified petrol is unleaded, min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use min. **95** ROZ petrol.

In an **emergency**, **91**, **92** or **93** ROZ petrol can be used (slight loss of power, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

! CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the engine and to the exhaust system.
- When petrol with a lower than the prescribed octane is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine. Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- **Lower** than **91** octane petrol should not be used, even in an emergency!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.

! CAUTION

Petrol additions (additives)
- The unleaded petrol in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore do not recommend mixing fuel additives into the petrol - risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.
- **The following additives may not be used - risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system!**
  - Additives with metal components (metallic additives), in particular with manganese and iron content.
  - Fuels with metallic content (e.g. LRP - lead replacement petrol).

i Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using the prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can lead to an increase in power and reduction in fuel consumption.

Engine compartment

Introduction

! WARNING

Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire.

! WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise risk of injury or fire. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area.

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

- Stop the engine and remove the ignition key, on vehicles with the KESSY system, open the driver's door.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- On vehicles with **manual transmission**, move the lever to the neutral position. For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine room

- Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – there is a risk of burns.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may still turn suddenly about 10 minutes after switching off the ignition!
- Do not smoke in the vicinity of the engine and avoid the use of open flames or sparks.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cleaning cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. There is a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- If it is necessary to work on the engine with the engine running, beware of **rotating engine parts and electrical plants** - they can be fatal!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.

CAUTION

Only refill using fluids with the proper specification - risk of damage to the vehicle!

Note

- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.
- We recommend you have the operating fluids replaced by a specialist garage.

Opening and closing the bonnet

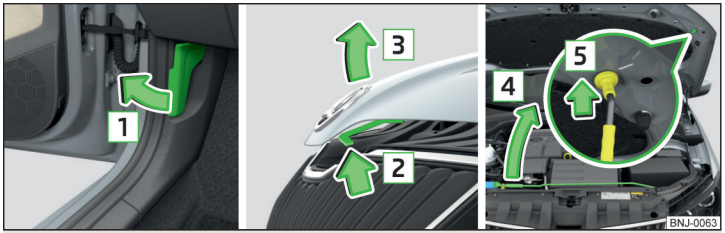


Fig. 246 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 209 first.

Open flap

› Ensure that the windscreen wipers are not raised away from the windscreen - risk of damage to the bonnet.
› Open the front door and pull the release lever below the dash panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 246.
› Press the release lever in the direction of arrow 2 and the bonnet will be unlocked.
› Raise the bonnet in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Drop down the bonnet lid from a height of about 20 cm applying light pressure until it clicks safely into place.

WARNING

- Never drive with the bonnet lid not properly closed - risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the bonnet, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

CAUTION

When closing the bonnet “do not press down” - there is a risk of damaging the bonnet.

Engine compartment overview

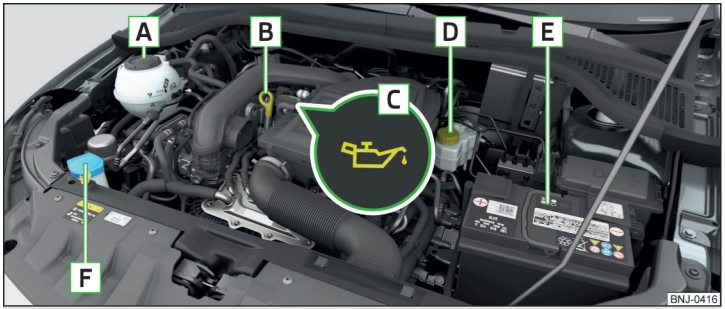


Fig. 247 **Arrangement (example) in the engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 209 first.

A	Coolant expansion tank	213
B	Engine oil dipstick	212
C	Engine oil filler opening	212
D	Brake fluid reservoir	214
E	Vehicle battery	214
F	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	211

Windscreen washer fluid

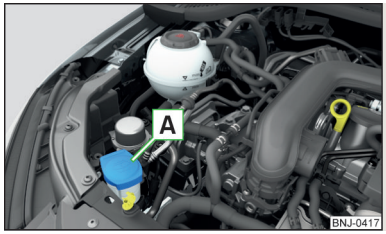


Fig. 248 **Windscreen washer fluid reservoir**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 209 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 248.

The contents of the container is 3.5 litres, for vehicles with a headlamp cleaning system 5.4 litres (for some countries, both versions have container volumes of 5.4 litres).

Use a suitable windscreen washer fluid for the current or expected weather conditions. We recommend that you use windscreen washer fluid from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

CAUTION

- Only use liquids that do not attack polycarbonates - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the headlights.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can become contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Specification

To find out which type of engine oil you can use for your vehicle, contact a specialist garage.

If this oil is not available, other oils can also be refilled. To prevent engine damage, a **maximum of 0.5 l** of engine oil with the following specifications may be used until the next oil change: VW 504 00, VW 502 00, VW 508 00, ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM).

Check and refill

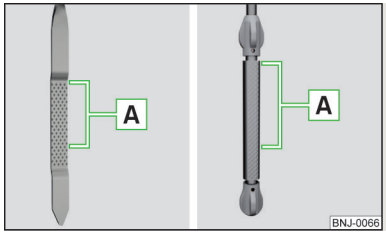


Fig. 249
Dipstick variants

The engine uses up some oil, depending on driving style and operating conditions (up to 0.5 l / 1 000 km). Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

Have the **oil change** carried out by a specialist garage during the inspection.

Check and refill oil under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the status

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the sump.
› Pull the dipstick out and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Push the dipstick back to the stop and then pull it out again.
› Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in.

The oil level must lie in range A » Fig. 249. If the oil level is below range A, oil must be added.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening C » Fig. 247 *on page 211*.
› Add oil of the correct specification in increments of 0.5 litres » page 211.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 209.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never fall outside range A » Fig. 249 – otherwise there is a risk of damaging the engine and the exhaust system.
- If a top up with oil is not possible or the oil level is above range A, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not add any additives to the engine oil - risk of engine damage.

Note

- An engine oil level which is too low is shown in the instrument cluster by the warning light illuminating and also indicated by the message.» page 43 Nevertheless, we recommend checking the oil level on a regular basis using the dipstick.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coolant

Introduction

The coolant helps to keep the engine temperature down, and consists of water and coolant additive (with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevent furring).

The proportion of coolant additive in the coolant must be 40 to 60 %.

The correct mix of water and coolant additive should be checked and if necessary corrected by a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 209.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurised - risk of scalding or injury from splashes of coolant!

WARNING (Continued)

- To protect against the coolant splashing, cover the cap with a cloth when opening.
- Coolant and coolant fumes are harmful - avoid contact with the coolant. If the coolant comes into contact with the eye or skin, wash the affected area with plenty of water for several minutes, and where appropriate seek medical help.

CAUTION

Do not cover the radiator and install any parts (e.g auxiliary lights.) in front of the air intakes - risk of the engine overheating.

Checking and refilling

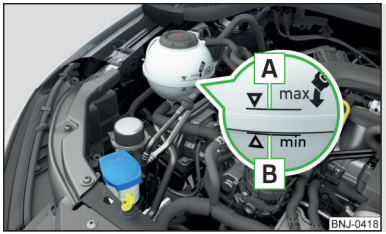


Fig. 250
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe and on page 212 first.

Check and refill coolant under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is not warm (if the engine is warm the result of the check may be wrong).
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the coolant level – The coolant level must lie between the marks A and B » Fig. 250. If the coolant level is below the mark B, top up with coolant.

Refilling

The reservoir must always contain a small amount of coolant » .

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and **carefully** unscrew the cap.
› Always top up using coolant of the correct specification.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

The **specification** for the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 250.

If the specified coolant is not available, then refilling only with distilled or demineralised water, and get a specialist garage to correct the water-coolant additive mix as soon as possible.

CAUTION

- With an empty expansion tank top up coolant. The system could aerate - risk of engine damage! Do not drive the vehicle! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 250. The coolant could, when heated, be expelled from the cooling system - risk of damage to the engine parts.
- If it is not possible to add coolant, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- A coolant additive which does not correspond to the correct specification can reduce the anti-corrosion effect of the cooling system - risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine.
- If non-distilled (non-demineralised) water has been used to top up, the coolant should be replaced by a specialist garage - risk of engine damage.
- A loss of coolant indicates **leaks** in the cooling system - risk of engine damage. Top up with coolant and then seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

A coolant level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message » page 43. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Brake fluid



Fig. 251
Brake fluid reservoir

Check the brake fluid under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Checking the brake fluid level – The brake fluid level must lie between the markings “MIN” and “MAX”» Fig. 251.

Specification - The brake fluid must comply with the standard **VW 501 14** (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

The **brake fluid change** is carried out during the inspection.

WARNING

- If the date of the brake fluid change is exceeded, steam bubbles could form in the brake system during heavy braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – There is a risk of accident!
- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 209.
- If the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the “MIN” » Fig. 251 mark, this may be an indication of a leak in the brake system. Do not continue driving - There is a risk of accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

A brake fluid level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message » page 38. We still recommend inspecting the brake fluid level in the reservoir from time to time.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery

The on-board power supply system tries to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging in the following ways when it is subject to heavy loading.

- By increasing the engine idle speed.
- Through the power limitation of certain loads.
- By switching off some loads(heated seats, heated rear window) for as long as necessary.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

Battery acid is highly corrosive - it can cause injury, chemical burns or poisoning! Corrosive vapours in the air irritate and damage the respiratory tract and the eyes. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Get medical assistance without delay.

WARNING (Continued)

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent (e.g. children).
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.

WARNING

Working on the car battery may cause explosion, fire, injury or chemical burn! The following guidelines must be observed.

- Do not smoke, use open flames or light or transmitting devices.
- **A discharged vehicle battery may freeze slightly.** Never charge up a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery.
- Do not connect the battery terminals, bridging the two poles will cause a short circuit.

CAUTION

Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the vehicle.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Checking the condition

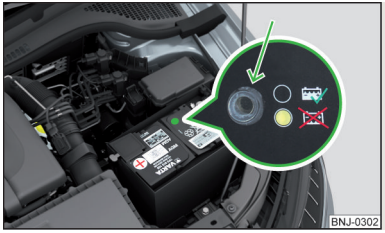


Fig. 252
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

The battery condition is checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Check the acid level

For car batteries with acid level indicator, acidity can be checked on the basis of a colour display. In vehicle batteries with the label **"AGM"** there is no acid level examination.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully tap on the indicator before carrying out the check » Fig. 252.

Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Battery discharge

If frequent short journeys are made, the vehicle battery does not recharge sufficiently.

The battery capacity decreases at low temperatures.

If the vehicle is not used for longer than 3 to 4 weeks, then disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ of the battery or charge the battery constantly with a very low charging current.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

Only charge the battery when the ignition and all consumers are switched off.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

Charging

- For vehicles **with** the START-STOP system or auxiliary heater ⊕, connect the -terminal of the charger on the battery's ⊕ - pole, ⊖ the - terminal of the charger to the ground point of the engine » page 228.
- For vehicles **without** the START-STOP system or auxiliary heating, connect the charger terminals to the corresponding battery poles (⊕ to ⊕, ⊖ to ⊖).
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch the charger on.
- Once charging is complete: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.

› Disconnect the terminals of the charger from the vehicle battery.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

WARNING

▪ When charging the vehicle battery, hydrogen is released - risk of explosion. An explosion can be caused through sparking while unclamping or loosening the cable plug.
▪ So-called “quick-charging” of the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge. Therefore, have “Quick loading” carried out by a specialist garage.

Disconnecting/reconnecting and replacing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 214 first.

We recommend you have the battery **replaced** by a specialist garage.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original battery.

Connecting/disconnecting

› To **disconnect**, switch off the ignition and disconnect the negative terminal first ⊖, then disconnect the positive terminal ⊕.
› When **reconnecting** the battery, reconnect the positive terminal first ⊕, then connect the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Power windows	» page 60
Time settings	» page 46

CAUTION

▪ Disconnect the battery only with the ignition and consumers turned off - risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
▪ Before disconnecting the battery, always close all electric windows otherwise malfunctions of the window can occur.
▪ Under no circumstances mix up the charging cables – risk of fire.

Note

After disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of the vehicle is guaranteed.

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

Advice on tyre/wheel usage

New tyres, during the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Tyres with the deeper profiles should always be fitted to the front wheels.

Rims and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheels and tyres should always be **stored** in a cool, dry and dark place. The tyres themselves should be stored vertically.

Tyre life
Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the **inside**). E.g. **DOT ... 10 18...** means that the tyres were produced in the 10th week of the year 2018.

Tyre damage
We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre's profile immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed and help should be sought from a specialist garage.

Fitting new tyres
Only fit approved radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tyres the tyres have to be replaced axle by axle.

Directional tyres
Some tyres may be directional. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The specified running direction must be strictly adhered to, otherwise the following tyre characteristics may be degraded.
- Driving stability.
- Traction.
- Tyre noise and tyre wear.

! WARNING

Never use damaged tyres or tyres that are older than 6 years old – risk of accident.

! CAUTION

- The tyres must be protected from contact with substances (e.g. oil, grease and fuel) which could damage them. If the tyres with these substances come into contact, then we recommend that you check this in a specialist workshop.
- Do not use alloy rims with a burnished or polished surface in winter conditions - there is a risk of wheel damage (e.g. from the road grit).

Tyre pressure

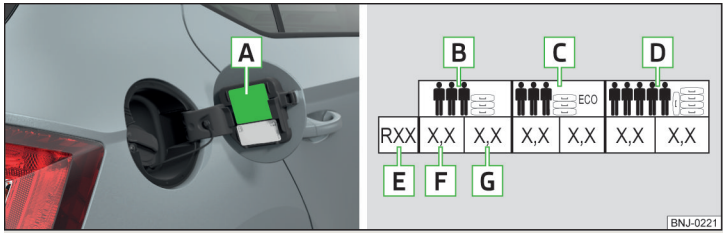


Fig. 253 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

The prescribed tyre pressure is indicated on the sticker with pictograms A » Fig. 253 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

B Inflation pressure for half load

C Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)

D Inflation pressure for full load

E Tyre diameter in inches
This information serves merely as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a list of shared tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document).

F Tyre pressure value on the front axle

G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

Check tyre pressures

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 193.

WARNING

- Do not drive with incorrect tyre pressure - risk of accident.
- In the event of very rapid pressure loss (e.g. in the event of tyre damage) an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking - risk of accident.

Note

The declaration of conformity (the so-called. COC document) can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (only valid for some countries and some models).

Tyre wear and wheel change

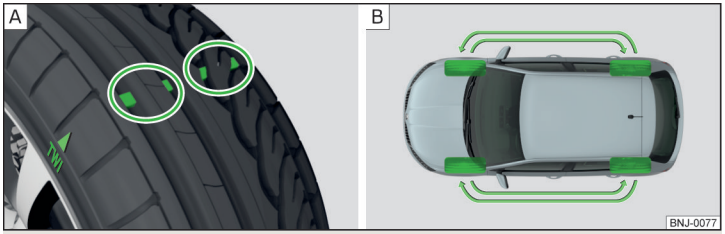


Fig. 254 **Tyre wear indicator / wheel change**

Tyre wear increases in the following circumstances.

- Incorrect tyre pressures.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration / braking).
- Incorrect wheel balancing (you should have the wheels balanced after changing/repair tyres or if the steering “is drifting”).
- Wheel alignment errors.

There are **wear indicator markers** in the tyre treads, indicating whether the minimum permissible tread depth has been reached » Fig. 254 - A. A tyre should be regarded as worn out when this indicator is flush with the tread. Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters “TWI” or other symbols (e.g. △) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

The tread depth can be measured with a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper, which is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

To ensure uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you **change** the **wheels** every 10 000 km, in line with the schedule » Fig. 254 - B.

WARNING

- Change the tyres at the latest when they are worn down to the wear indicators - risk of accident.
- Faulty wheel alignment affects handling - risk of accident.
- Unusual vibrations or the vehicle “pulling” to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. Reduce speed and stop! If there are no external signs of tyre damage, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Spare wheel

A **full spare wheel** corresponds to the wheel mounted on the vehicle in terms of the wheel dimensions, the tire dimension and the tire type.

A **temporary spare wheel** is provided with a warning label on the rim. Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage since it is not intended for permanent use.

Instructions for using a temporary spare wheel

- Do not cover the warning sign.
- Be specially attentive when driving.

Inflate the spare wheel to the maximum prescribed inflation pressure » page 217.

WARNING

A temporary spare wheel can only be used for a short time in the event of a breakdown and with a correspondingly careful driving method.

Tyre marking

Explanation of tyre markings - e.g. 185/60 R 15 84 H

185	Tyre width in mm
60	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
84	load index
H	Speed symbol

Load index - indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre

load index	83	84	85	86	87	88
Load (In kg)	487	500	515	530	545	560

Speed symbol - indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in a given category

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270

WARNING

Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** and **speed** for the tyres fitted – risk of accident.

Operating in winter conditions

All-year (or “winter”) tyres

All-year or “winter”tyres (indicated by an **M+S** or a mountain peak/snowflake symbol) to improve the performance of the vehicle in winter conditions.

To get the best possible driving characteristics, all-year or “winter”tyres, with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels, should be fitted.

If “winter” tyres are mounted, summer tyres should be fitted again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol

All-year or “winter”tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category than listed in the vehicle’s technical documentation can be used provided that the maximum permissible speed for these tyres is not exceeded even if the maximum possible speed of the vehicle is higher.

On vehicles with Infotainment, the speed limit for all-season or “winter” tyres can be set with the button CAR in menu CAR → → **Tyres**. For other vehicles, there is the option to set the speed limit for winter tyres at a specialist garage.

If the vehicle has all-season or “winter”tires of a lower speed category then the specified maximum speed of the vehicle (referring to tyres that have not been delivered by the factory, a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category provided for the mounted tyres must be fixed in the interior of the vehicle in a constantly visible place in the driver’s field of vision. The warning

label (sticker) can be replaced by setting the maximum value of the speed category specified for the mounted tyres in Infotainment (only applies to certain countries). This specification defines the maximum vehicle speed with mounted all-season or “winter”tyres that may not be exceeded.

Snow chains

The snow chains improve handling in wintry road conditions.

Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.

Snow chains must only be fitted on the front wheels and are applicable only to the following wheel / tyre combinations.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
5J x 14	35 mm	175/70 R14

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 9 mm.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
6J x 15	38 mm	185/60 R15

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

WARNING

Do not use chains on snow and ice-free routes - the handling would be impaired and there is a risk of damage to the tyres.

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

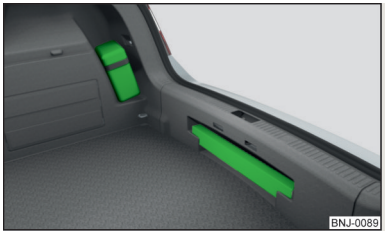


Fig. 255
Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle - version 1

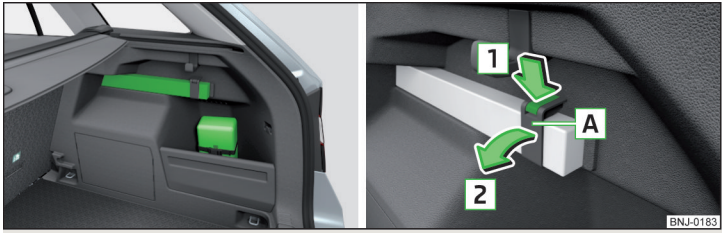


Fig. 256 **Placing the first aid kit and the warning triangle - variant 2 / release the warning triangle**

The following information is for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original accessories valid.

Placing the first-aid kit
The first-aid kit can be attached to the right-hand side of the boot using a strap » Fig. 255 or » Fig. 256.

Placing of the warning triangle - variant 1
The warning triangle can be stored in the recess under the loading edge » Fig. 255.

Position of the warning triangle - variant 2
The first-aid kit can be attached to the right-hand side of the boot using a strap » Fig. 256.

› To **release**, press the clasp on the strap in the direction of arrow 1 and fold open the strap A in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 256.
› To **secure**, fold up the belt A against the arrow direction 2 until it locks into place.

! WARNING
Properly secure the first aid kit and the warning triangle, or there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Location of reflective vest

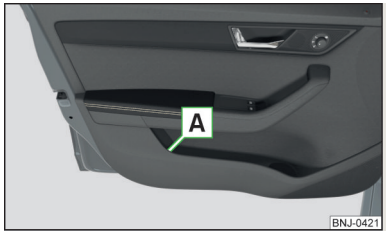


Fig. 257
Stowage compartment for the reflective vest in the front door

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartment A inside the storage compartment of the front door » Fig. 257.

Fire extinguisher



Fig. 258
Release the fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a bracket under the front passenger's seat.

› To **remove** the fire extinguisher, release the safety catches on the two straps in the direction of arrow » Fig. 258 and remove the fire extinguisher.
› To **secure**, place the fire extinguisher back in the mount and secure with the belts.

The Owner´s Manual is fitted next to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. After this date, the correct function of the device is not guaranteed.

WARNING

Always properly secure the fire extinguisher, there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Vehicle tool kit

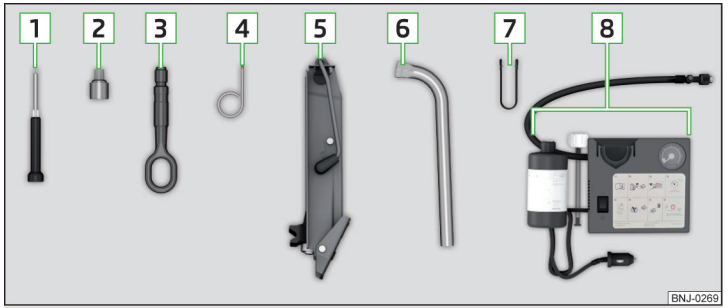


Fig. 259 **Vehicle tool kit**

The box containing the vehicle tool kit is located in the stowage compartment for the spare wheel, and can be secured with a tape depending on the equipment fitted.

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components in the on-board tool kit have to be contained in it.

1 Screwdriver
2 Top section for the anti-theft wheel bolts
3 Towing eye
4 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
5 Jack with sign
6 Wheel brace
7 Extraction pliers for the wheel bolt caps
8 Breakdown kit

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift other vehicles or loads with it – there is a risk of injury.
- Always stow the tool in the box securely and make sure that it is secured to the spare wheel using the tape - there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

CAUTION

Screw the jack back to its starting position prior to putting it back in its box – Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the box.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

› Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** select **1, gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road while the wheel is being changed (they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
› Uncouple any trailers.

Changing a wheel

› Remove the spare wheel » page 223.
› Remove the full wheel trim» page 224or caps» page 224.
› Loosen the wheel bolts » page 225 » !.
› Jack up the vehicle» page 225 until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (“pulling crossways”) » page 225.
› Replace the wheel trim» page 224and caps» page 224.

When fitting a wheel with directional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 217.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily. If screws are corroded and difficult to move, these must be replaced.

! WARNING

▪ Undo the wheel bolts just a little (about one turn), provided the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come loose and fall off – risk of injury.
▪ Under no circumstances must the bolts be greased or oiled - cause an accident.

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work should be carried out.

› Stow the replaced wheel in the well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and secure with a locking screw.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the strap.
› Check tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary and, with vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 193.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible. The prescribed tightening torque is **120 Nm**.

Replace the damaged tyre. Repairing the tyre is not recommended.

! WARNING

Tightening torque which is too high can damage the threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim. Where tightening torque is too low, the wheels may become loose while driving - risk of accident. Therefore, drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Removing/stowing the spare wheel



Fig. 260
Taking the wheel out

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the luggage compartment and is fixed in place with a fastening screw » Fig. 260.

Taking the wheel out

› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the fastening screw in the direction of arrow » Fig. 260 and the remove the wheel.

Stowing the wheel

› Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw the fastening screw opposite to the direction of arrow until it stops » Fig. 260.
› Place the box with the tool kit back inside the wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Full wheel trim

Remove trim

› Hang the clamps for removing the full wheel trims at the edge of one of the ventilation openings in the full wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install trim

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference latches correctly into position.

The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is indicated by means of a symbol on the back of the wheel trim supplied ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories. If using the anti-theft wheel bolt it should be fitted at this point » !.

WARNING

We recommend that you use wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories. A sufficient air supply may not be able to be guaranteed with other wheel trims to cool the braking system – Otherwise there is a risk of an accident.

CAUTION

■ If the wheel trim is positioned outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.
■ Use only manual pressure and do not hit the full wheel trim – otherwise there is a risk of damaging the trim.

Note

We recommend that you use wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 261
Remove the cap

› To **remove the cap** insert the extraction pliers as far as they will go on the cap and pulling them out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 261.
› To **install**, insert the cap onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

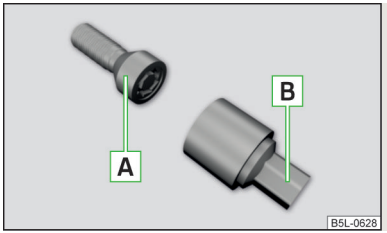


Fig. 262
Anti-theft wheel bolt and attachment

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect wheels from being stolen. This can only be **loosened/tightened** with attachment B » Fig. 262.

› Insert the upper section B on the anti-theft wheel bolt A until it stops.
› Insert the key as far as it will go onto attachment B and loosen / tighten the wheel bolt.
› Remove the attachment.

The attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in case of a possible wheel change!

For wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Note

We recommend that you retain the label with the code number. A replacement upper section can be acquired from ŠKODA Original Parts based on this.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 263
Loosening the wheel bolts

› Insert the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop. Use the associated attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts » Fig. 262 *on page 224*.
› To **loosen the screws**, grasp the key end and turn the screw about **one** turn rotation in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 263.
› To **tighten the screws** grasp the key end and turn the screw against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 263, until it is tight.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing - danger of injury.

Raising the vehicle

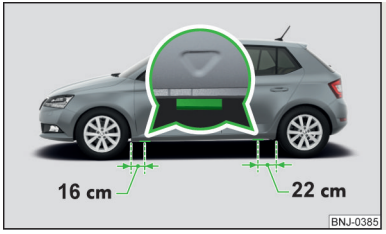


Fig. 264
Jacking points for the jack

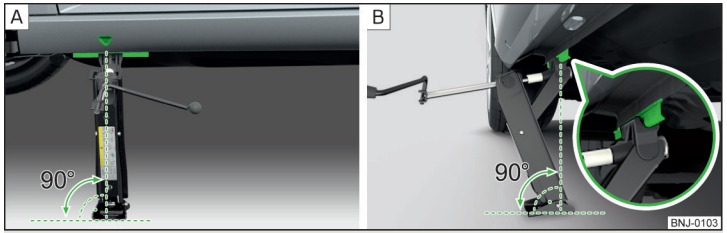


Fig. 265 **Attach lifting jack**

Before the vehicle is raised, please take note of the safety instructions » !.

To lift the vehicle, us the jack from the tool kit. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.

The jacking points are located on the lower sill » Fig. 264.

› Position the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack will fit in the jacking point when raised » Fig. 265 - A.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its pawl covers the jacking point » Fig. 265- B.
› Raise the vehicle until the wheel is a little off the floor.

WARNING

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is risk of injury.
- Ensure the vehicle cannot unexpectedly roll away.
- Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip.
  - Place a wide and stable base material under the jack if on a loose surfaces (e.g. gravel).
  - Place an anti-slip base material (e.g. a rubber mat) under the jack if on a smooth surface (e.g. cobblestones).
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts (e.g. arms or legs) under the vehicle while the vehicle is raised.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the bar of the lower beam – otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Breakdown kit

Introduction

The following information applies for the breakdown kit supplied ex-factory.

The breakdown kit can be used to seal punctures with a diameter of up to about 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit **is never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit as soon as possible, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre (e.g. nails).

Do not use the breakdown kit in the following cases.

- The rim is damaged.
- The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the instruction manual for the tyre filling bottle with sealant.
- Tyre punctures greater than 4 mm.
- Damage to the tyre wall.
- The use-by date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- If there is skin contact with the sealant wash the affected area immediately.
- Observe the instructions provided in the puncture repair kit manufacturer's instructions for use.

Description of the breakdown kit

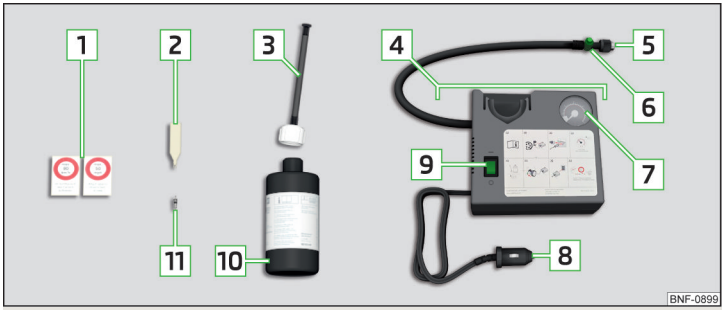


Fig. 266 **Description of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 226 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

1. Sticker with “max. 80 km/h”/“max. 50 mph” speed designation
2. Valve remover
3. Inflation hose with plug
4. Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor delivered with the vehicle)
5. Tyre inflation hose
6. Button for tyre pressure reduction
7. Tyre pressure indicator
8. 12 volt cable connector
9. ON and OFF switch
10. Tyre inflator bottle with sealant
11. Replacement valve core

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Preparing to use the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 226 first.

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before undertaking a wheel repair on a road.

› Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** select 1st **gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› Have **all the occupants get out**. While the repair is being carried out, the passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
› Uncouple any trailers.

Sealing and inflating tyres

Read and observe ! on page 226 first.

Sealing

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Attach the valve remover 2 » Fig. 266 *on page 226* onto the valve insert, so that the valve insert fits into the slot of the valve remover.
› Unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean base (rag, paper etc.).
› Forcefully shake bottle 10 several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the bottle cap is pierced.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and insert the bottle onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw in the valve insert with the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 266 *on page 226* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, set the lever in the neutral position.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector 8 into 12 volt socket » page 79.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Once tyre inflation pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar has been reached, turn off the air compressor. Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the instructions of the repair kit manufacturer » !.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to “distribute” in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Stick the corresponding sticker 1 onto the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

At a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar, the journey can be continued at a maximum speed of 80 km/h or 50 mph.

! WARNING

- If the tire does not inflate to at least 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot while the tyre is being inflated – there is a risk of injury.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor at the latest after the running time according to the instructions of the repair kit manufacturer has elapsed – otherwise there is the risk of compressor damage! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Information on driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 226 first.

The filling pressure of the repaired tyre is a 10-minute test drive.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› You cannot properly seal the tyre using the breakdown kit. **Do not continue to drive!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value » page 217.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre. The following guidelines must therefore be observed.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

! WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 209.
- When handling the vehicle battery, the following warnings must be observed » page 214.
- A discharged vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion and injury!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns!

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

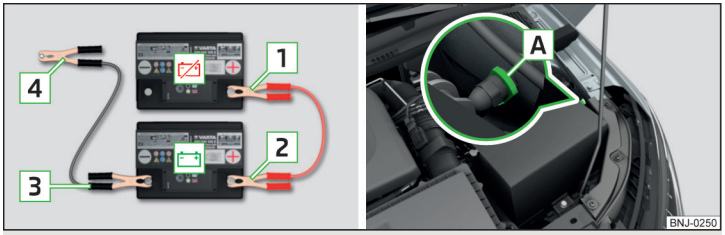


Fig. 267 **Jump-starting: - discharged battery, - power-supplying battery/ground point of the engine for the START-STOP system**

Read and observe ! on page 228 first.

If, because of a discharged battery, it is not possible to start the engine, the battery of another vehicle can be used to start the engine. To do this, jump-start cables are required which have a sufficiently large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.

The **rated voltage** of the two batteries must be 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the power-supplying battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged battery.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the power-supplying battery.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the power-supplying battery.
› For vehicles **with** the START-STOP system, attach clamp 4 to the ground point of the engine A » Fig. 267.
› For vehicles **without** the START-STOPsystem, attach clamp 4 to a solid metal part firmly attached to the engine block or directly to the engine block.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Initiate the starting process in the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start within 10 s, then cancel the starting procedure and repeat after half a minute.
› Detach the jumper cables in the exact **reverse** order that they were attached.

WARNING

- Never clamp the jump cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery - risk of explosion.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit.
- Position the jump cables so that they cannot be caught in rotating parts in the engine compartment - danger of injuries and the risk of vehicle damage.

Towing the vehicle

Information about the towing process

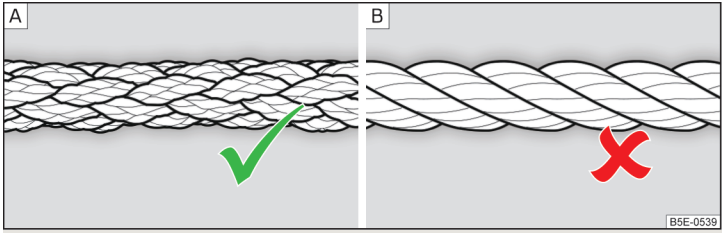


Fig. 268 **Braided tow ropes/spiral tow rope**

To tow with a tow rope, use only a braided synthetic fibre rope » Fig. 268 - A » !.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes at the front** » page 230, **towing eyes at the rear** » page 230 or to the **towing device of the trailer device** » page 195.

Conditions for towing.

✓ **Cars with automatic gearboxes must not be towed with the rear wheels raised - there is a risk of gearbox damage!**

✓ If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.

✓ The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

✓ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› On vehicles with **manual transmission**, engage gear slowly when starting.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, accelerate with particular care.
› Only then, approach correctly when the rope is taut.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running. The brake booster and power steering only operate if the engine is running, otherwise much greater force has to be applied to the brake pedal and more power has to be expended for steering.
› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel does not lock and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Keep the tow rope taut at all times during the towing procedure.

WARNING

- Spiral tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 268- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle – risk of accident.
- The tow rope should not be twisted - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- Do not tow-start the engine – There is a risk of damaging the engine. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 228, *Jump-starting*.
- For off-road towing manoeuvres, there is a risk to both vehicles that the fasteners may become overloaded and damaged.

Note

We recommend that you use a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Front towing eye



Fig. 269 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Cap removal/fitting

› To **remove**, press down on the cap in the direction of arrow 1 and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 269.
› To **fit** it, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **fit**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 269 until it clicks into place » !.
› **Tighten** the towing eye using a wheel wrench or similar object. To do this, insert the wheel wrench through the eye.
› To **remove**it, unscrew the towing eye in the opposite direction to arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be firmly in place, otherwise the towing eye could break whilst being towed.

Towing eye rear



Fig. 270
Rear towing eye

The rear towing eye is located below the bumper on the right.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the pre-installed detachable tow-bar may be used» page 195, *Hitch*.

Remote control and removable light - changing the battery

Introduction

! CAUTION

- The replacement battery/batteries must comply with the original specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.

i Note

We recommend having the faulty battery/batteries replaced by a specialist garage.

Key with fold-out key bit

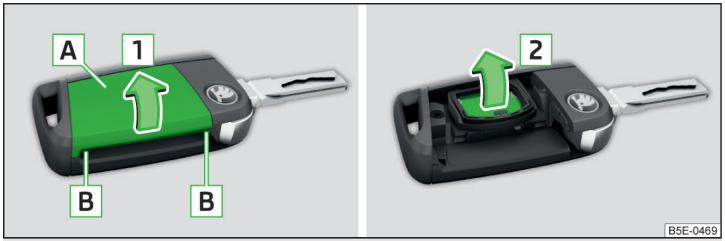


Fig. 271 **Opening the cover/removing the battery**

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

› Pop out the key bit.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 271 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region B.
› Open the battery in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2.
› Hold any button on the key for about 5 s.
› Insert the new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the key after replacing the battery » page 56.

Removable light



Fig. 272
Locking clip on the battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

› Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the area of the lock clips A » Fig. 272.
› Replace the batteries.
› Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION

If an incorrect battery type is used or a non-rechargeable battery, there is a risk of damaging the light and the vehicle's electrical system.

Emergency unlocking/locking of doors

Unlocking/locking the front left door



Fig. 273 **Door handle: Open lock cover / lock cylinder with key**

The door can be emergency unlocked / emergency locked using the key via the lock cylinder.

› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Insert the key into the recess on the lower side of the cover and fold up the cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 273.
› Release the door handle.
› Insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing upwards** » Fig. 273 into the lock cylinder and unlock/lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Replace the cover.

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without locking cylinders

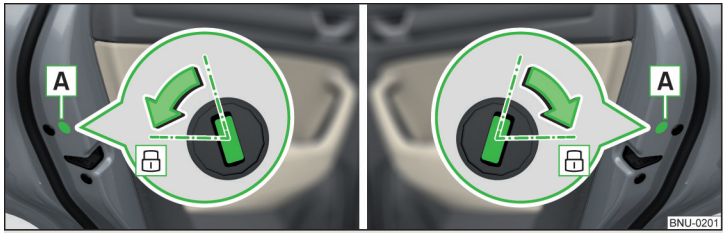


Fig. 274 **Left door/right door:**

› Open the corresponding door.
› In vehicles with the panel A, remove this panel » Fig. 274.
› Insert the key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (spring-loaded position).
› Replace the cover A.

After closing, the door is locked.

Unlocking the boot lid

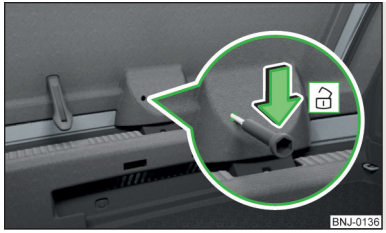


Fig. 275
Unlocking the door

The boot lid can be unlocked manually from inside the vehicle.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim » Fig. 275 as far as the latch.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Selector lever emergency unlocking



Fig. 276 **Remove / release the selector lever**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or similar tool into the gap in the arrow area 1 » Fig. 276 and carefully lift the cover in arrow direction 2.
› Likewise lift the cover with your hand as well.
› Press on the yellow plastic part in the direction of arrow 3, simultaneously press the lock button in the selector lever handle and put the lever in position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

CAUTION

Make sure when lifting not to damage cover parts by the screwdriver in the shift lever environment.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades



Fig. 277
Setting the service position for the wiper arms



Fig. 278 **Changing the front windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 232 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blades, close the bonnet and put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Setting the service position

› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Push the lever in the direction of arrow » Fig. 277 within 10 seconds and hold for approximately 2 seconds.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 278.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 277.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 279 **Changing the rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 232 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 279.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

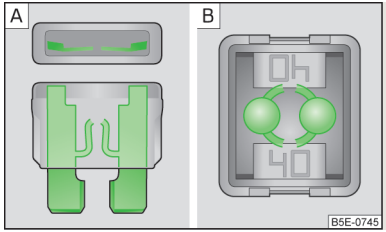


Fig. 280
Blown fuse

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip » Fig. 280 A/B.

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 209.

CAUTION

- Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse again blows after a short time, then seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- “Do not repair” the fuses and do not replace them with stronger fuses - danger of fire and damage to another electrical system.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle.
- One fuse may cover several consumers. A single consumer may use several fuses.

Fuses in the dashboard

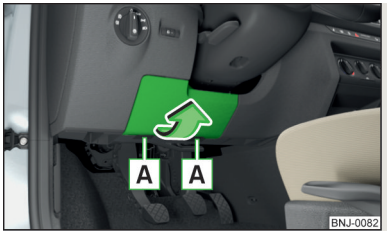


Fig. 281
Remove the cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 234 first.

The fuses are located on the bottom of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Remove the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 281 in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Insert the top edge of the cover into the dash panel first.
› Push the lower edge of the cover in the region A.

Fuse assignment in the dashboard



Fig. 282
Fuses: A LHD / B - RHD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 234 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Left parking light, parking light, high-mounted brake light
2	Central locking, front and rear window washer system (only with ACC)
3	Ignition
4	Right-hand light, rear fog light, license plate light
5	Power windows - driver
6	Interior lighting
7	Horn
8	Tow hitch
9	Operating lever beneath the steering wheel, engine control unit (only without KESSY), automatic gearbox (only without KESSY), selector lever of the automatic transmission (only without KESSY), ESC (only without KESSY), towing equipment (only without KESSY), power steering (only without KESSY)
10	Power windows - rear left
11	Headlight cleaning system
12	Infotainment screen
13	12 volt socket in luggage compartment
14	Operating lever under the steering wheel, light switch, ignition key removal lock (automatic transmission), diagnostic connector, headlight flasher, rain sensor, light sensor, reversing camera
15	Air conditioning, automatic transmission
16	Instrument cluster, emergency call
17	Anti-theft alarm, horn
18	Databus
19	Not assigned
20	Not assigned
21	Not assigned
22	Front and rear windshield washer (only without ACC)
23	Not assigned
24	Blower fan for the air conditioning system, heating, air conditioning, heating
25	Not assigned
26	Heated front seats
27	Rear window wiper
28	Not assigned
29	airbag
30	Light switches, reversing light switch, exterior mirrors, feed for the central toolbar, feed for the side toolbar, rear view mirror, air-conditioning system, park assist
31	Fuel pump, radiator fan, cruise control, front and rear window washer, engine start
32	Diagnostics connection, headlamp leveling, washing nozzle heating, LED headlights
33	Clutch pedal switch
34	USB charge function
35	“Blind spot” detection
36	Heated front seats

No.	Power consumer
37	Radar
38	Not assigned
39	Not assigned
40	Databus
41	Rear window heating
42	Power windows - front passenger
43	Tow hitch
44	Cigarette lighter, 12-volt power socket
45	Power windows - rear right
46	Front and rear window washer, operating lever under the steering wheel
47	Tow hitch
48	Tow hitch
49	Fuel pump
50	Infotainment
51	Heating of the external mirror
52	KESSY
53	KESSY steering lock
54	Not assigned
55	Not assigned
56	Not assigned
57	Not assigned
58	Not assigned
59	Not assigned

Fuses in the engine compartment

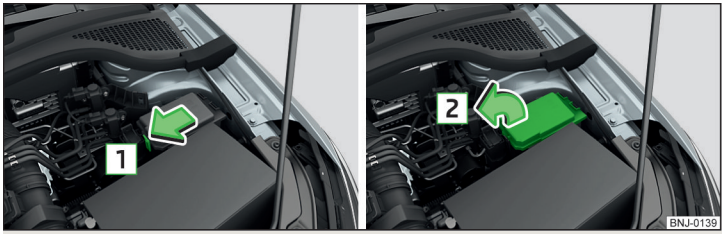


Fig. 283 **Remove the cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 234 first.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Press together the lock buttons of the cover simultaneously in the direction of arrow 1 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 283.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder on the cover of the fuse box in the dash panel.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the cover, push the lock buttons of the cover together and lock.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.

! CAUTION

The cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be used correctly, otherwise water may penetrate into the fuse box – there is a danger of damage to the vehicle!

Fuse assignment in engine compartment

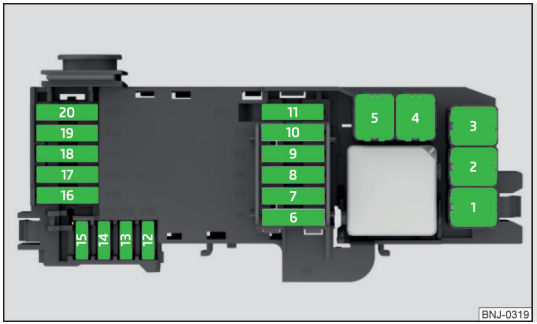


Fig. 284
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 234 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Radiator fan
2	Not assigned
3	ABS or ESC
4	Not assigned
5	Not assigned
6	Automatic gearbox
7	Engine control system
8	Windscreen wipers
9	Battery data module
10	ABS or ESC
11	Vacuum pump for the brake system
12	Injectors, valve for fuel metering, control valve for oil pressure, valve for exhaust gas recirculation cooler, negative pressure pump
13	Brake pedal switch
14	Fuel pump, coolant pump
15	Engine control system
16	Starter
17	Engine control system
18	Radiator fan, wastegate, oil temperature sensor, valve for activated charcoal filter, valve for intake manifold
19	Lambda probe
20	Ignition coils

Bulbs

Introduction

This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs or LED lights must be replaced by a specialist garage.

We recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

! WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 209.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- H7 and H8 bulbs are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.

CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- The cap of the filament bulb must always be seated correctly in the headlight, otherwise this may allow water and debris to enter the headlight - risk of damage to the headlights.

Note

We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle.

Bulb arrangement in the front headlights



Fig. 285 **Left headlight: Halogen / LED**

Read and observe and on page 237 first.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 285

A Low beam
B High beam and flashing light
C Flashing

Cover the front wheel Removing / replacing

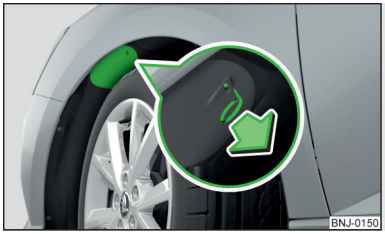


Fig. 286
Remove plastic cover

Read and observe and on page 237 first.

The cover in the front wheel well must be removed in order to change certain light bulbs.

Details about removing the cover if needed, are given in the description of each lamp change.

Removal

› Set the front wheels so that the respective cover is accessible.
› Insert the clamp for removing the full wheel covers» page 222, *Vehicle tool kit*into the recess in the cover.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow » Fig. 286.

Inserting

› Insert and push the cover into the corresponding opening.

The cover must engage securely.

Remove/replace the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle

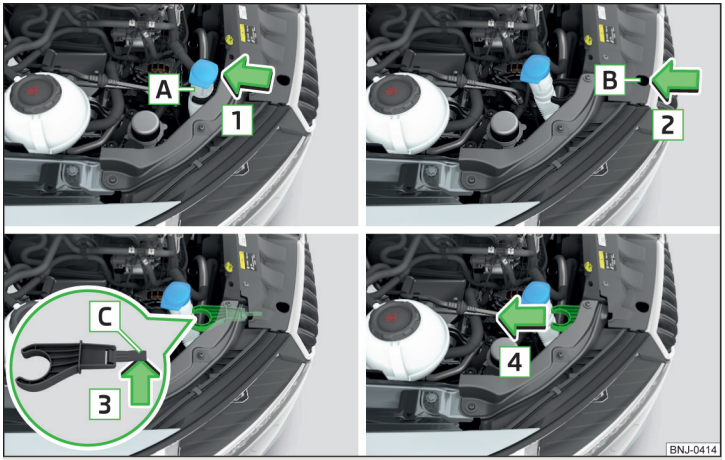


Fig. 287 **Remove the mounting for the mopping water container nozzle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 237 first.

The mounting for the mopping water container nozzle must be removed in order to replace some light bulbs. The holder is located in the engine compartment, front right.

Details about removing the mounting, if needed,are given in each lamp replacement description.

Removal

› Remove the container nozzle A from the holder in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 287.
› Insert a finger into the recess B in the direction of arrow 2 and lift the catch C in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the holder of the container nozzle in the direction of arrow 4.

Inserting

› Slide the holder of the container nozzle in the opposite direction to the arrow 4 » Fig. 287.

The holder must engage firmly.

› Push the container nozzle into the holder in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.

Changing bulbs for low and main beam (Halogen headlights)

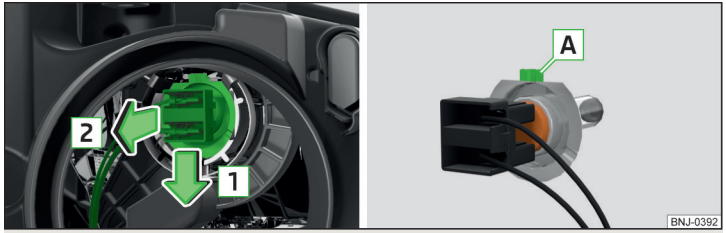


Fig. 288 **Removing bulbs for low and main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 237 first.

› Before changing the light bulb for **dimmed headlights**, remove the associated cover in the front wheel arch » page 238.
› Before changing the light bulb for **high beam** in the **right** headlight, first remove the bracket of the wash water tank support » page 239.
› Remove the protective caps A or B» Fig. 285 *on page 238*.
› Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 288.
› Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Plug the connector into the new bulb so that the fixing lug A on the bulb points upwards.
› Insert the connector, with the bulb, into the headlight opposite to the direction of arrow 2 until you feel it lock into place.
› Use the protective caps A or B» Fig. 285 *on page 238*.
› After changing the light bulb for **high beam** in the **right** headlight, replace the bracket of the wash water tank support » page 239.

› After changing the light bulb for **dimmed headlights**, replace the cover in the front wheel arch » page 238.

Changing the bulb for the front turn signal light

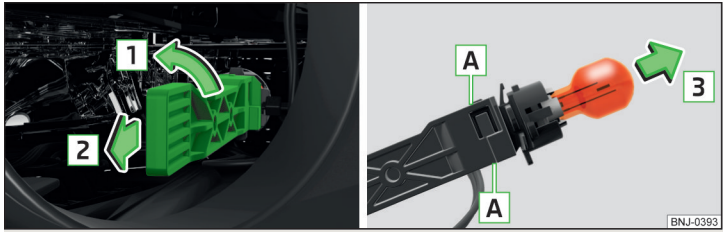


Fig. 289 **Changing the bulb for the front turn signal light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 237 first.

› Before changing the lamp in the **right** headlight, first remove water container nozzle bracket » page 239.
› Remove the protective caps B or C » Fig. 285 *on page 238*.
› Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 289.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2 .
› Hold the housing containing the bulb in area A.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb in the holder until it stops.
› Insert the holder with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the holder with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Use the protective caps B or C » Fig. 285 *on page 238*.
› After changing the bulb in the **right** headlamp, reuse the bracket for the wash water container nozzle » page 239.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

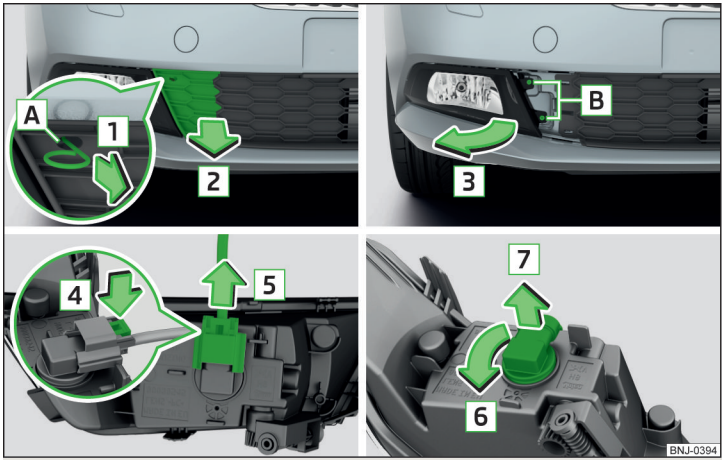


Fig. 290 **Removing the number plate light / replacing the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 237 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 290.
› By pulling the hook in direction of arrow 1, remove the protective grille in the direction of arrow 2.
› Unscrew the screws B using the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 3.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Turn the holder with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 7 .
› Insert a new holder with the bulb in the headlamp and turn it in the direction of arrow 6 as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 290 and tighten.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Removing/installing tail light

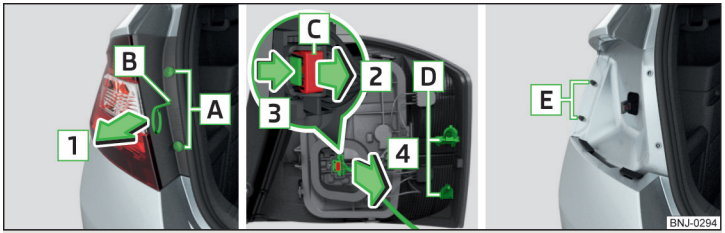


Fig. 291 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 237 first.

Removing

› Open the tailgate.
› Unscrew the screws A » Fig. 291 with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Into the opening B insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims, directed with the eyelet downward (in the right light with the eyelet upward).
› Grasp the light with the palm of your hand and remove carefully from pin D in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Press the latch C on the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Press the latch in the direction of arrow 3 and pull out the holder in the direction of arrow 4.

Fitting

› Insert the bulb holder into the lamp.
› Tighten the lock in the opposite direction to the arrow 2 » Fig. 291.
› Insert the lamp with the holes D onto the pins E in the body.
› Carefully press the light into the pins on the bodywork » !.
› Screw the light into place.
› Shut the boot lid.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become stuck between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – or there is a risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the wiring harness has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in the rear lamp - Option 1 (with LED lamps)

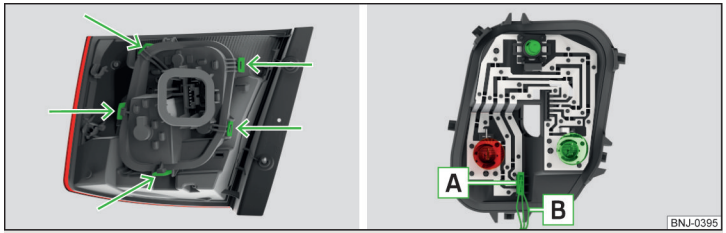


Fig. 292 **Outer part of the lamp/holder with bulbs**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 237 first.

› Unlock the bulb holder at the areas marked with arrows » Fig. 292 and remove from the light.
› Turn the respective light bulb **counter-clockwise** to the stop and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder into the light » !. The holder must engage securely.

! CAUTION

- Before inserting the bulb holder into the light , check that the connector A » Fig. 292 is fitted correctly between the light and the bulb holder.
- Make sure that when refitting the bulb holder into the light, the wiring harness B is not pinched - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the electrical installation.

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly - Variant 2

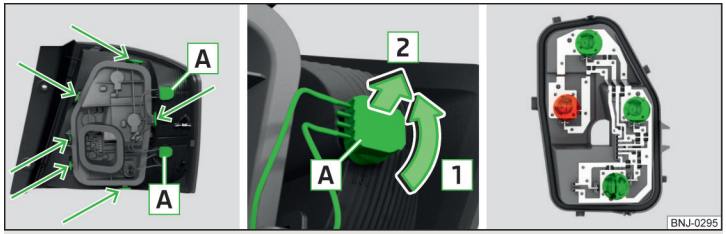


Fig. 293 **Outer part of the lamp / removing the bulb / lamp holder**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 237 first.

Outer part of the lamp

› Turn the holder with the bulb A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 293.
› Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
› Jiggle the bulb to remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the socket.
› Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Inner part of the light

› Unlock the bulb holder at the areas marked with arrows » Fig. 293 and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective light bulb **counter-clockwise** to the stop and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the light. The holder must engage securely.

Technical data

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The listed values are for the basic model without optional equipment.

Vehicle data

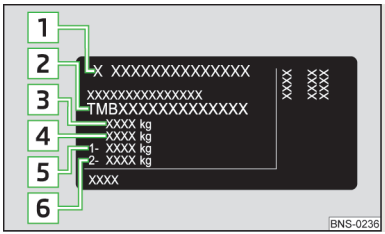


Fig. 294
Type plate

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 294 is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right-hand driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

1 Vehicle manufacturers
2 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
3 Maximum permissible gross weight
4 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
5 Maximum permissible front axle load
6 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped on the right hand suspension strut dome in the engine compartment. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), together with a nameplate.

In Infotainment, the VIN number can also be displayed in the menu CAR → ⚙ → **Service**.

Engine number
The engine number is embossed in the engine block.

Maximum permissible trailer weight
The listed maximum permissible trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight comprises the actual weights of the (loaded) towing vehicle and the (loaded) trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of an accident and damage.

Operating weight

This value is only a guide value and corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without further weight-reducing equipment (e.g. spare wheel etc.). This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

Operating weight - Fabia

Engine	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/44 kW MPI	MG	1086
1.0 l/55 kW MPI	MG	1086
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	MG	1121

Engine	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1132
	DSG	1165
1.6 l/66 kW MPI	MG	1105
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	AG	1142

Operating weight - Fabia Combi

Engine	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/55 kW MPI	MG	1106
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	MG	1141
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1152
	DSG	1185
1.6 l/66 kW MPI	MG	1125
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	AG	1162

Note

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle by contacting a specialist garage.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 195.

measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The valid specifications for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, the COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Note

- The emission and fuel consumption values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.
- Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values.

Dimensions

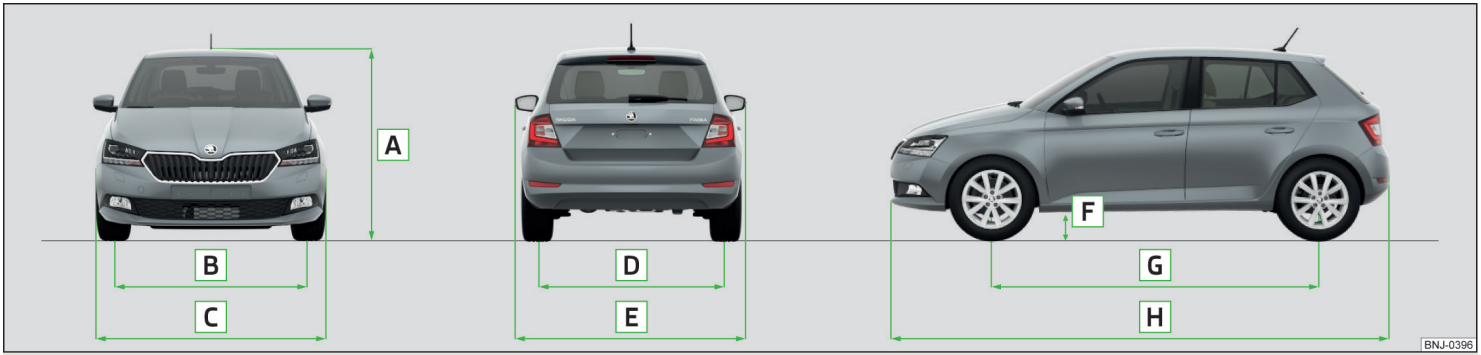


Fig. 295 **Vehicle dimensions**

The vehicle dimensions given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.
The dimensions listed below are for the basic model without any optional equipment.

Vehicle dimensions by operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 295	Specification		Fabia	Fabia Combi
A	Height		1467	1467
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1463	1463
		Vehicles with 1.0 l/81 kW TSI engine	1457	1457
C	Width		1732	1732
D	Rear track	Basic dimension	1457	1457
		Vehicles with 1.0 l/81 kW TSI engine	1451	1451
E	Width including exterior mirrors		1958	1958
F	Clearance		133	135
G	Wheelbase		2470	2470
H	Length		3997	4262

Departure angle



Fig. 296
Overhang angle

Angle » Fig. 296

A Overhang angle, front
B Overhang angle, rear

The overhang angle values indicate the maximum incline of a slope, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without the bumper or underbody making contact with the slope. The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Overhang angle (°)

Overhang angle, front		Overhang angle, rear	
Fabia	Fabia Combi	Fabia	Fabia Combi
14.4	14.4	17.4	12.7

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

Introduction

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The exhaust gas standard is specified in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document). The declaration of conformity (the so-called. COC document) can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (only valid for some countries and some models).

1.0 l/44 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	44/5000-6000
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	95/3000-4300
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3- 999
Body	**Fabia**
Gearbox	**MG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	157 (5)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	16.6

1.0 l/55 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	55- 6200	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	95/3000-4300	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3- 999	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	168 (5)	169 (5)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	14.9	15.2

1.0 ltr./70 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	70/5000-5500	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	160/1500-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3- 999	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	184 (4)	185 (4)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.8	10.9

1.0 ltr./81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81/5000-5500			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	200/2000-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3- 999			
Body	**Fabia**		**Fabia Combi**	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	195 (5)	194 (6)	196 (5)	195 (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.6	10.1	9.7	10.2

1.6 l/66 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	66/4250-6000	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	155/3800-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1598	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	180 (5)	182 (5)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.8	10.9

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81- 5800	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	155/3800-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1598	
Body	**Fabia**	**Fabia Combi**
Transmission	**AG**	**AG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	188 (5)	190 (5)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.1	11.3

Index

A

A2DP/AVRCP 131
Abort route guidance 157
ABS 40, 173
ACC 45
see Adaptive Cruise Control 185
Accessories 202
Activation of online services 13
Adaptive cruise control
Malfunctions 190
Overtaking 190
Setting/changing the desired speed 188
Special driving conditions 189
Stop/resume control 188
Trailer towing 190
Warning light 39
Adaptive Cruise Control 45, 185
automatic stopping and starting 187
Operation 186
Radar sensor 172
Settings in Infotainment 186
Setting the distance 188
Start control 188
Adjusting
Steering wheel 19
Advance warning / Emergency braking 45
Advice on tyre/wheel usage 217
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 93
air bag 24
airbag
warning light 40
Airbag
Adjustments and impairments to the airbag system 203
Deactivation 26
Deployment 24
Airbag system 24
Air conditioning 91
Climatronic 92
Manual air conditioning 91
Recirculated air mode 93
Air outlet vents 93
Alarm 56
Trailer 201
All-year tyres 219
Alphanumeric keyboard 99
Alternative routes 109
AM 115, 116
Amundsen
external module 97
Infotainment description 95
Android Auto 139
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 173
Anti-theft alarm system 56
Trailer 201
Anti-theft wheel bolts 224
APN 107
Apple CarPlay 140
applications
Disclaimer 95
Armrest
Front 70
Ashtray 80
Assembling the
bar ball, Step 1 196
bar ball, Step 2 197
Assist systems 172
Audio source 122
Auto Check Control
Vehicle status 46
Automatic consumer shutdown 214
Automatic distance control
activate 187
Summary of operations 187
Automatic drive
Selector lever 168
Automatic driving light control 62
Automatic gearbox
Disengage selector lever 169
Kickdown 170
Malfunction 42
Selector lever lock 169
Start and drive 170
Warning light 42
Automatic switch-off of Infotainment 99
Automatic transmission 168
Selector lever emergency unlocking 232
Tiptronic 169
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 171

B

ball bar
ready position 196
Ball head
Check fitting 197
Ready position 195
Battery
Changing batteries for the removable light 231
Changing in key 230, 231
Belts 21
Belt tensioners 23
Blind spot monitoring assistant
Activation / deactivation 180
Blues
Infotainment description 96

Bluetooth
A2DP/AVRCP 106
Name 106
Paired external devices 106
Profiles 131
Set 108, 112
setting 106
Switching on/off 106, 112
Update 104, 107
Updates 112
Visibility 106, 112
Bluetooth Player 123
Bluetooth® update 130
Bonnet 210
Boot
Cargo element 87
Hooks 83
see boot lid 57
Boot lid 57
Automatic locking 58
Open/Close 57
Brake Assist (HBA) 174
Brake booster 166
Brake fluid 214
Check 214
specification 214
Brake pads
New 166
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)
Warning light 42
Brakes
Brake fluid 214
Braking and stabilisation systems 173
Handbrake 166
Information on braking 166
Run in 170
Warning lights 38
Brake system 173
Braking
Brake booster 166
Breakdown call 132
Breakdown kit 226
Broadcasting 115, 116
Bulbs
Replacing 237
Buttons in driver's door
Electric power windows 58

C

Call list
Call list 134
CAR 161
Car battery
Automatic consumer shutdown 214
Disconnecting and reconnecting 216
Replacing 216
CAR button 161
Car care
Exterior 205
Interior 207
Car computer
see multifunction display 48
Care and maintenance 202
Care Connect 16
Cargo element 87
Car park 148
Carrier 90
CarStick 136
Car washing 204
Exterior 205
Interior 207
washing 204
cellphone
Disclaimer 95
Central locking 52
Problems 56
Central locking button 54
Changing
Batteries for the removable light 231
Battery 230, 231
Windscreen wiper blades 233
Changing a wheel 222
Changing 222
Changing gear
Selector lever 168
Changing wheels
Wheels 222
Charging a vehicle battery 215
Check
Brake fluid 214
Engine oil 212
Fit ball head properly 197
Oil level 212
Checking
Battery condition 215
Coolant 213
Children and safety 28
Child safety lock 56
Child seat 28
Classification 30
Installation location 30, 31
in the passenger seat 30
ISOFIX 31
on the front passenger seat 29
TOP TETHER 32
Cigarette lighter 80
Clearing calls 108
Climatronic 91
Automatic operation 93
Operating elements 92
Recirculated air mode 93
Clock 114
Change display 100
Clothes hook 78

cockpit 35
Cockpit
Lighting 64
Coin and card holders 75
Comfort flashing 61
COMING HOME 63
compartments 73
Compatible sources
Images 127
Component protection 203
Computer
see multifunction display 48
Conditions for pairing 131
Conference call 134
Configuration wizard 101
Connect external device to the Infotainment hotspot 137
Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device 137
Coolant 212
Checking 213
Refilling 213
Temperature display 37
Warning light 43
CORNER 63
Correct routing of seat belt 21
Correct seating position 18, 20
Cruise control
activate 183
lever 183
Cruise Control System 182
Cup holders 75
Custom POI categories 151

D

DAB 115, 116
Additional information 115
Radio text and images presentation 115
Set 108, 113
DAB slideshow 115
Data connection
Amundsen 136
CarStick 136
Internet 136
Data roaming 107
Date 105, 111
DAY LIGHT
see Daytime running lights 61
Daytime running lights 61
Deactivation
Airbag 26
Defrosting rear window 66
Delayed locking of the boot lid
See boot lid 58
Delete destination 155
Demo mode 110, 156
Departure angle 246
Destination
Custom destination 150
Enter destination using the address 147
enter in map 147
Favourite 149, 155
Flagged destination 149
Home address 150
Image with GPS 152
Last destinations 149
Map point 148
Memory 155
Online destinations 149
search 146
Stored destination 149
Telephone contact 149
Types of destination search/destination entry 145
vCard 149
Destination details 155
Destination management
Destination details 155
Favourite 155
Storage 155
Destination memory 149
Device menu
Sound 105
Digital clock 46
Digital service schedule 50
Dipped beam 60
Dipstick 212
Directive 2014/53/EU 8
Disclaimer
applications 95
external devices 95
Mobile phones 95
Display
Coolant temperature 37
Fuel level 37
Gear changes 46
In the instrument cluster 45
MAXI DOT 49
Display of a low temperature 44
Display POIs in the map 148
Distance warning 191
Diverting calls 108
Door
Child safety lock 56
Emergency locking 232
Emergency locking of the driver's door 231
Opening/ Closing 55
Door alarm 45
Drive Green 171
Driver information system 45

driving
emissions 244
fuel consumption 244
Driving
Driving through water 172
Maximum speed 247
Dynamic route 160

E

Economical driving 170
Edit route 157
EDS 174
Electrical power windows 59
Electric power windows 58
Buttons in driver's door 58
Malfunctions 60
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL, XDS) 174
Electronic immobiliser 162
Elevation 143
emergency
Jump-starting 228
Emergency
Hazard warning light system 64
Jump-starting 228
Selector lever unlocking 232
Starting/stopping the engine at the push of a button 163, 164
Towing the using the tow hitch 230
Towing the vehicle 229
Tyre repair 226
Unlocking/locking the door 231, 232
Emergency call 15, 132
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 221
First aid kit 221
Jack 222
Reflective vest 221
Vehicle tool kit 222
Warning triangle 221
Emission control system 40
Emissions 244
Engine
Information messages 43
Run in 170
Engine compartment 209
Brake fluid 214
Coolant 212
Engine oil 211
Overview 211
Vehicle battery 214
Windscreen washer fluid 211
Engine drag torque control (MSR) 173
Engine number 243
Engine oil 211
Check 212
Oil changing 211
Refilling 212
Specification 211
Warning light 43
Enter destination 147
EPC 40
Equalizer 105
ESC
Operation 173
External device data transfer 101, 106, 111
External devices
Disclaimer 95
External module 97
SD card 122
Extras
manual search 116
Scan 116

F

Factory settings 106, **112, 161**
Familiarizing yourself with the vehicle 2
Fastening elements 82
Fatigue detection
Fatigue detection system 193
Fatigue detection system 193
Favourite 149, 155
Favourite contacts 133
file formats
media 124
Requirements and Restrictions 124
File formats
Images 127
File Formats 125
Films 205
Find
Car park 148
Petrol station 148
Restaurant 148
Finish route guidance 157
Fire extinguisher 221
First aid kit 221
Flagged destination 149
Flashing 61
Flexible storage compartment 87
Floor covering in the luggage compartment 84
Floor mats 168
See Floor mats 168
FM 115, 116
Set 108, 112
Fog lights 63
Warning light 42
Fog lights/rear fog light 63
Force limiter
Window 59
Front assist
Warning light 45

Front Assist 190
Deactivation/activation 192
Distance warning 191
Malfunctions 192
Operation 190
Radar sensor 172
Settings in Infotainment 190
Warning and automatic braking 191
Warning light 45
Front seats 70
Fuel 208
Fuel gauge 37
refer to Fuel 208
Refuelling 208
Unleaded petrol 209
Warning light 41
fuel consumption 244
Fuel options 110
Fuel reserve 41
Functional surfaces 97
Fuses 234
in the dashboard 234, 235
in the engine compartment 236, 237

G

Gearbox
Information messages 42
Gear change
Gear recommendation 46
Information on the selected gear 46
Gear changing
lever 167
Genuine parts 202
Glasses storage box 77
GPS 143
Graphical driving recommendations 156

H

handbrake
warning light 38
Handbrake 166
Hazard warning light system 64
HBA 174
Headrests 72
Adjusting the height 72
Heater
Recirculated air mode 93
Heating 91
Mirrors 69
Rear window 66
Seats 72
Heating rear window 66
High beam
Light Assist 62
Hill Start Assist 174
hitch 199
Hitch 195
Home address 109, 150
Hooks 83
horn 35
Hotspot
Connect 137
Set 137

I

I-PAD holder 80
Ignition lock 163
Images
Compatible sources 127
Display 108
File formats 127
Main menu 126
Operation 126
Requirements and restrictions 127
Safe removal of the data source 106
Selecting the image source 126
Set 108
Supported file formats 127
Image viewer 126
Immobiliser 162
Import
Destinations (online) 152
Destinations (vCard) 150
POI categories 151
POI categories (online) 144, 151
Routes (online) 158
Import contacts 113
Importing contacts 108
In an emergency
Changing a wheel 222
Inertia reels 23
Information about the towing process 229
Information call 132
Information system 45
Gear recommendation 46
MAXI DOT display 49
Multifunction display 48
Service interval display 50
Infotainment 95
Infotainment description
Amundsen 95
Swing 96
Infotainment Description
Blues 96
Infotainment language 105, 111
Infotainment menus
Grid display 100
Horizontal display 100
Infotainment Online 17
Infotainment operation 97
Infotainment screen 97

Infotainment operation using an application in the external device 101
Infotainment overview 95
Infotainment restart 99
Infotainment screen 105, 111
Areas 97
Important information 97
Keyboard 99
Maintenance 97
Operation 97
Input screen
Language characters 111
Input screen with keyboard 99
Instrument cluster 36
Vehicle status 46
Warning lights 37
Interior lights 65
Interior monitor 57
Internet 136
Amundsen 136
CarStick 136
ISOFIX 31

J

Jack 222
Jacking points
Raise vehicle 225
Journey data 48
Jump-starting 228

K

KESSY
deactivating 53
Starting/Stopping the engine 163
Switching the ignition on/off 163
Unlocking/locking 53
Key
Changing battery 230, 231
Lock 52
Starting/Stopping the engine 163
Switching the ignition on/off 163
Unlock 52
Keyboard 99

L

Lamp failure 44
Lamps
Warning light 44
Lane recommendation 156
Language characters 105
Last destinations 149
Latitude 143
LEAVING HOME 63
LED interior light 65
lever
ACC 187
Lever
Cruise control 183
Front Assist 192
Operation of the information system 47
overspeed 185
Turn signal/main beam 61
Windscreen wipers 67, 68
Liability for defects 6
Light 60
Cockpit 64
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 63
Daytime running lights 61
Flash 61
Fog lights/rear fog light 63
Function CORNER 63
Hazard warning light system 64
Headlight cleaning system 68
Light Assist 62
Parking light 64
Replacing bulbs 237
Turn signal/main beam 61
Light Assist 62
See Light Assist 62
Lighting
Interior lighting 64
Luggage compartment 82
Lights
Abroad 64
Automatic driving light control 62
Dipped beam 60
Headlight range control 60
Parking lights 60
Switching on and off 60
Warning lights 37
List
of available stations 117
of telephone contacts 132
With folder/track list 121
List of available hotspots 137
List of paired external devices 131
List of traffic reports 159
Load 244
Location Services 15
Lock
Individual settings 54
KESSY 53
Key 52
Locking
Central locking button 54
in case of emergency 232
Remote control 52
Lock steering lock 162
Longitude 143
Luggage compartment 82
Cover 84
Fastening elements 82
Fixing nets 83
Flexible storage compartment 87

Floor covering on both sides 84
Lighting 82
Net partition 86
Removable light 88
Roll-up cover 85
Storage compartments under the floor 87
unlocking manually 232
Unlocking the boot lid 232
Variable loading floor 89
Luggage compartment cover 84
Other positions 85
Roll-up cover 85
Luggage Storage
Storage compartments 86

M

Main beam 61
Warning light 42
Main menu
Android Auto 140
Apple CarPlay 141
Images 126
Media 119
Media Command 128
MirrorLink® 141
Navigation 144
Radio 115
SmartLink+ 139
SMS 135
WLAN 137
Make up mirror 66
Manage memory 109
Management of online services 14
Management of online services ŠKODA Connect 112
Management of ŠKODA Connect Online Services 107
Manage stored routes 158
Managing paired devices 131
Manoeuvre
Graphical driving recommendations 156
Navigation announcements 156
Manual air conditioning
Controls 91
Recirculated air mode 93
Manual gear changing
See Gear changing 167
Map
Automatic scale 153
Display 145
Display of traffic signs 109
Display options 152
Display POIs 148
Fast map view 153
Lane guidance 109
Main menu 145
Manual scale 153
Map centring 154
Operation 145
Orientation 153
POI display 109
Road signs 154
MAXI DOT
See MAXI DOT display 49
MAXI DOT display
assist systems menu item 50
Audio menu item 50
Main menu 49
Navigation menu item 50
Operation 47
MAXI DOT Display
Apple CarPlay 50
Telephone menu 50
Maximum speed 247
MCB 175
Mechanical window lifter 58
opening/closing 58
media
Compatible sources 124
file formats 124
Requirements and Restrictions 124
USB 74
Media
Audio source 122
Bluetooth Audio 123
Browser 121
File Formats 125
List 121
Main menu 119
Multimedia database 121
Operation 119
Playback control 120
Safe removal of the data source 106
Safe removal of the external data source 112
SD card 122
Select audio source 119
Set 113, 114
Setting 108
Supported Media 125
USB 122
Voice control 102
WLAN 123
Media Command
Control 128
Main menu 128
Supported formats 128
Memory 49
Mirror 66, 68
MirrorLink® 141
Modes of the automatic transmission 168
Modifications and technical alterations 202
More keypad languages 105, 111
Most frequent routes 157
MSR 173
Multicollision brake (MCB) 175

Multifunction display
Functions 48
Information Overview 48
Memory 49
Multifunction pocket 83
Multifunction steering wheel 47
Multimedia
see Media 119
Multimedia database 121
Multimedia holder 76
Mute 100
MyŠKODA App application 10

N

Navigation
Abort route guidance 157
Advanced settings 110
Alternative routes 109
Contacts 149
Demo mode 110, 156
Destination address 147
Destination details 155
Destination display 152
Destination in map 147
Destination memory 149
Destination search 146
Dynamic route 109
Edit route 157
Favourites 149
Finish route guidance 157
Foreword 143
Fuel options 110
GPS 143
Graphical driving recommendations 156
Home address 150
Image with GPS 152
Import destinations 150
Imported destinations 109
Last destinations 149
Main menu 144
Manage memory 109
Map 109
Map centring 154
Map display options 152
Map orientation 153
Map scale 153
Most frequent routes 157
Navigation announcements 110, 156
Navigation data 144
Preferred type of route 109
Route 154
Route calculation 155
Route details 157
Route display 152
Route guidance 154
Route information 157
Route list 158
Route options 109
Set 109
Speed limits 110
Split screen 145
Start route guidance 155
Status line 110
Stopover 154
Traffic obstruction 160
Trailer towing 156
Types of destination search/destination entry 145
Update navigation data 144
Update the navigation data 110
Updating the navigation data online 144
Version information 110
Voice control 102
Working with the navigation 143
Navigation announcements 110, 156
Navigation data 144
Net partition 86
Nets 83
Network
Data connection 107
Data roaming 107
Set 108
setting 107
Values of the downloaded data 107
New route 158
Notes 11

O

oil
see Engine oil 212
Oil changing
Engine oil 211
Onboard computer
see multifunction display 48
Online
Destination details 155
Destination import 149
Destination search 146
Details of the traffic report 160
Find car park 148
Find petrol station 148
Import destination 152
Importing POI categories 144, 151
List of traffic reports 159
Route import 158
Update navigation data 144
Updating the navigation data 144
Online destinations 149
Online services
Deleting the user 13
Electronic Owner's Manual 13
Instruction video 13
private mode 14
service management 14
Switching user 13
Switch online services in the service workshop off/on 14

Switch online services on/off in infotainment 14
ŠKODA Connect Portal website 12
Online Services 12
Activation in Infotainment 13
Care Connect 16
Infotainment Online 17
Location Services 15
proactive service 16
Remote access to the vehicle 16
Service package 12
Status Symbols of Online Services 15
ŠKODA Connect website 12
Online services ŠKODA Connect
enable service 112
Operating the Infotainment menus 99
Operating weight 243
Operation
Images 126
Media 119
Radio 115
Telephone 129, 130
Voice control 103
Original accessories 202
overspeed
activate 185
lever 185
overview
cockpit 35
Overview
Engine compartment 211
Fuses 234
Warning lights 37

P

Pairing process 131
Park
Rear traffic alert 178
Park assistant
Activation/deactivation 180
Parking 167
Parking aid 175
Parking aid 175
Automatic system activation when moving forward 177
Operation 176
Settings in Infotainment 175
Parking assistance
Activation / deactivation 177
Parking lights 60
Parking sensors
Display Infotainment screen 176
Parking the vehicle
see Parking 167
ParkPilot 175
Particulate Filter 44
Parts replacement 202
Passive safety
Before every journey 18
Driving safety 18
Passive Safety 18
Pedals 168
Floor mats 168
Petrol 209
Petrol station 148
Petrol station logo 109
PIN
Set 108
Playback
Media 120
Pockets 78
Pockets in the luggage compartment 83
POI 151
POIs 148
Power steering 39
Practical features
Glasses storage box 77
Pockets 78
Storage compartment for umbrella 78
Waste container 75
Preset list 117
Principles of Infotainment operation 97
Private mode 14
Proactive service 16

R

Radio
Broadcasting 116
List of available stations 117
Main menu 115
manual search 116
Operating 115
Preset buttons 117
Preset list 117
Radio station logo 118
Save station 117
Scan 116
Search for stations 116
Select station 117
Set 107, 112, 114
Traffic program (TP) 118
Voice control 102
Radio equipment
Information on Directive 2014/53/EU 8
Radio station
Save 117
Radio station logos 118
Update 107
Radio stations
Select stations and search 116
Raise vehicle 225
Rear fog light 63
Warning light 40
Rear seats 70
Rear traffic alert 178

Rear Traffic Alert
Malfunctions 180
Operation 179
Rear view mirror 68
Recirculated air mode 93
Refilling
Coolant 213
Engine oil 212
Windscreen washer fluid 211
Reflective vest 221
Refuelling 208
Fuel 208
Register online services
settings 107, 112
Registration of online services
Electronic Owner's Manual 13
Instruction video 13
Regulation
Headlight beam 60
Remote access to the vehicle 16
Remote control
Changing battery 230, 231
Synchronisation process 56
Unlocking/locking the vehicle 52
Removable light 88
Changing batteries 231
Removing the
bar ball, Step 1 197
bar ball, Step 2 198
Repairs and technical alterations 202
Replacing
Bulbs 237
Fuses 234
Windscreen wiper blades 233
Reset counter for distance driven (trip) 45
Restaurant 148
Rev counter 36
Rims 217
Road signs
Infotainment display 154
Roller blind
see Luggage compartment cover 85
Roof
Load 90
Roof rack 90
Route 154
New route 158
Online route import 158
Route list 158
Store route 157
Route calculation 155
Trailer towing 156
Route details 157
Route information 157
Route list 158
Route options 109
Run-in
Engine 170
Running in
Brake pads 166
Tyres 217

S

SafeLock 54
Safe removal of the data source 106
Safe removal of the external data source 112
safety
air bag 24
Safety 18
Child safety 28
Child safety seats 28
Correct seating position 18
Headrests 72
ISOFIX 31
TOP TETHER 32
SAFE, SAFELOCK
See SafeLock 54
Save station 117
Saving electrical energy 170
Saving fuel 170
Scan 116
Scraper 206
Screen
see Infotainment screen 97
Screen display 97
SD card 122
Safe removal 112
Search
Destination 146
Online destinations 146
Types of destination search/destination entry 145
Search for stations 116
Seat belt
height adjustment 21
Warning light 42
Seat belts 21
Belt tensioners 23
fastening and unfastening 22
Inertia reels 23
Warning light 38
Seats
Adjusting the front seats 70
front 70
Front armrest 70
Headrests 72
Heating 72
Rear 70
Rear seat 71
Rear seat backrests 70
Setting 70
see Instrument cluster
see Instrument cluster 36

Select audio source 119
Selector lever 168
Selector lever control 168
Selector lever lock 42
Select station 116, 117
service 202
Service
Service interval display 50
Warning light 45
Service interval 50
Service interval display 50
Service intervals 50
Service schedule 50
Setting
Headrests 72
Mirror 68, 69
Seat belt height 21
Seats 70
Time 46
settings
ŠKODA Connect 112
Settings
Advanced settings 110
APN 107
Bluetooth 106, 108, 112
Codecs 108
Configuration wizard 101
DAB 108, 113
Data connection 107
Equalizer 105
External device data transfer 106, 111
FM 108, 112
Fuel options 110
Images 108
Information regarding the navigation data version 110
Infotainment 105, 111, 114
Infotainment language 105, 111
Infotainment screen 105, 111
Manage favourites 133
Manage memory 109
Map 109
Media 108, 113, 114
More keypad languages 105, 111
Navigation 109
Navigation announcements 110
Network 107
PIN 108
Radio 107, 112, 114
Reset to factory settings 106, 112, 161
Route options 109
SmartLink+ 109, 113
Software update 104
Software updates 112
Sound 105, 111, 114
Sound system 105
Speed limits 110
Subwoofer 105
Surround 105
System information 104, 107, 112
ŠKODA Connect 107
Telephone 108, 113
Text messages 108
Time and date 105, 111
Units 106, 111
Update software 107
User profile 133
Vehicle 161
Voice control 106
Volume 100
WLAN 106
Set to
lower position of the variable loading floor 89
upper position of the variable loading floor 89
Setup 114
Shifting
Tiptronic 169
SmartLink+ 138
Android Auto 139
Apple CarPlay 140
Introduction to the subject 138
Main menu 139
MirrorLink® 141
Set 109, 113
ŠKODA OneApp application 142
SMS
Main menu 135
New message 135
Received message 136
Snow chains 220
sockets
12-volt power socket in the luggage compartment 79
12-volt socket in the interior 79
Software update 104
Software Update 107
Software updates 112
SOS button 15
Sound 105, 111, 114
Sound system 105
Spare wheel 219
Removing/stowing 223
Speed limiter 42, **184**
Speed limits 110, 156
Speed regulating system
Warning light 42
Speed symbol 219
Split screen 145
Manoeuvre 156
Spoiler 203
SSID 106
Stabilisation system 173
Stability Control (ESC) 39, 173
Standby 100

START-STOP 164
Deactivate/activate the system manually 165
Functionality 164
Jump-starting 228
Warning light 44
START-STOP system 164
Start engine 163
Jump-starting 228
Starter button
Lock/unlock the steering lock 162
Problems with starting the engine 164
Starting/Stopping the engine 163
Switching the ignition on/off 163
Starting engine
Jump-starting 228
Starting the engine
Immobiliser 162
Start route guidance 155
Status bar 97, 145
Status line
Navigation 110
Telephone 129, 130
Status Symbols of Online Services 15
Steering lock (KESSY system) 39
Steering wheel
Adjusting 19
Buttons 47
Proper posture 19
Stop engine 163
Stopover 154
Stopping
see Parking 167
Storage 73
Storage compartments
see Practical features 73
Stored destinations
Destination memory 149
Last destinations 149
Store destination 155
Subwoofer 105
Sun visors 66
Supported audio sources 125
Supported files 125
Supported sources
media 124
Surround 105
Swing
Infotainment description 96
Switch
Car battery 216
Switching off Infotainment 99
Switching off the ignition 163
Switching on Infotainment 99
Switching on the ignition 163
Switching the lights on and off 60
Switch off
Alarm 56
System information 104, 107, 112

T

Tablet holder 80
TCS 39, 40, 174
Technical data 243
Telephone
Additional telephone 131
Bluetooth profiles 131
Bluetooth® update 130
Breakdown call 132
Call list 134
Call settings 108
Clearing calls 108
Compatibility 130
Conditions for pairing 131
Conference call 134
Connecting to the infotainment 130
Connection types 131
Dialling the telephone number 132
Diverting calls 108
Emergency call 132
Enter telephone number 132
Favourite contacts 133
Functions 132
Import contacts 113
Importing contacts 108
Information service 132
Introductory information 129
Main menu 129, 130
Main telephone 131
Manage favourites 113
Managing favourites 108
Operation 129, 130
pairing 130
Pairing process 131
Premium 108
Set 108, 113
Setting text messages 108
Telephone 129, 130
Telephone book 132
Telephone call 134
Text messages (SMS) 135
User profile 108, 113
Voice control 102
Voicemail 132
Telephone book 132
Telephone call 134
Telephone compatibility 130
Telephone connection types 131
Telephone functions 132
Telephone number 132
Text messages 135
Ticket holder 74
Time 46, **105, 111**
see Clock 114
Time and date display in the Infotainment screen 100

Tiptronic 169
TMC
Details of the traffic report 160
Dynamic route 160
List of traffic reports 159
Tools 222
TOP TETHER 32
Touch screen 97
Towing 230
Towing a trailer 200
Towing away 229
Towing device
Accessories 198
Description 195
Vertical load 195
Towing eye 230
Towing protection 57
Towing the vehicle 229
Traction control (TCS) 39, 174
Traffic
Details of the traffic report 160
Dynamic route 160
List of traffic reports 159
Traffic Information (TMC) 160
Traffic jam 160
Traffic obstruction 160
Traffic program (TP) 118
Traffic reports (TMC) 159
Trailer
Connect and disconnect 199
Loading 199
Towing a trailer 200
Trailer towing 195
Navigation 156
Transmitter
See main menu 115
Transport
Luggage compartment 82
Roof rack 90
Towing device and trailer 195
Transporting children 28
Triangle 221
Turn signal 61
Turn signal system
Warning light 41
Tutorial videos 10
Type plate 243
Tyre
Wear indicator 218
Tyre load capacity 219
Tyre pressure 217
Warning light 41
Tyre pressure monitor
refer to the tyre pressure monitoring 193
Tyre pressure monitoring 193
Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display 194
Warning light 41
Tyre repair 226
Tyres 217
damage 217
Explanation of the label 219
new 217
Tyre pressure 217
Tyre size 219

U

Units 106, 111
Unlock
Individual settings 54
KESSY 53
Key 52
Unlocking
Central locking button 54
In case of emergency 231
Remote control 52
Unlocking and locking 52
Unlock steering lock 162
Update navigation data 144
Update the navigation data 110
Updating the navigation data 144
USB 74, 122
Safe removal 112
Useful equipment
Clothes hook 78
Cup holders 75
Multimedia holder 76
Useful features
Storage compartment 73
Useful Features
12-volt power socket in the luggage compartment 79
12-volt socket in the interior 79
Ashtray 80
Cigarette lighter 80
Coin and card holders 75
Pockets 78
Reflective vest 221
Ticket holder 74
Useful links 2
User account
Configuration wizard 101
User profile 108, 113

V

Variable loading floor 89
vCard 149, 150
Vehicle battery
Charging 215
Checking the condition 215

Safety instructions 214
Warning light 43
Winter operation 215
Vehicle care 203
Exterior 206
Vehicle cleaning 203
Exterior 206
Windscreens 206
Vehicle dimensions 245
Vehicle height 245
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 243
Vehicle length 245
Vehicle settings 161
Vehicle status
Auto Check Control 46
Vehicle systems 161
Vehicle tool kit 222
Vehicle width 245
Vest 221
VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 243
Visibility 65
Visors 66
Voice control 102
Commands 103
Correction of a voice command input 103
Help 103
Not recognising a voice command 103
Operation principle 103
Settings 106
Stopping/restoring entry 103
switching on/off 102
Voicemail 132
Volume 100
Volume setting 100

W

Warning at when speeding 49
Warning lights 37
Warning symbols
see Warning lights 37
Warning triangle 221
Warranty 6
Waste container 75
Water
driving through 172
Weather conditions 202
Weights 243, **244**
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolts 224
Caps 224
Loosening and tightening 225
Wheels 217
Directional tyres 217
Full trim 224
Load Index 219
Snow chains 220
Speed symbol 219
Tyre age 217
Tyre damage 217
Tyre pressure 217
Tyre storage 217
Winter tyres 219
Window convenience operation 59
Window operation 58
Windows
operating 58
Windscreen washer fluid
Refilling 211
Warning light 44
Windscreen washing systems 66
Windscreen wipers and washers 66
Activation 67, 68
Add fluid 211
Replacing the windscreen wiper blade 233
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 233
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms 233
Winter operation 219
All-year tyres 219
Snow chains 220
Vehicle battery 215
Winter tyres 219
Winter tyres 219
Wipers and washer
Warning light for windscreen washer fluid level 44
Wiping interval 67
Wireless Internet Hotspot
setting 106
Wizard for blind spot monitoring 178
Driving situations and warnings 179
Operation 179
WLAN 123, 137
Client 137
Connect 137
Connect to hotspot 137
Set hotspot 137
Switch hotspot on/off 137
WPS 106, 138
WLAN client
setting 106
WLAN Client 137
WPS 106, 138

X

XDS 174

Other Characters

ŠKODA Connect
register 112
Register 107
see Online Services 12

services Manager 112
Services Manager 107
Set 107
set to 112
ŠKODA Connect Online Services
Enable services 107
Register 107
ŠKODA OneApp application 142

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2018

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Fabia anglicky 11.2018
6V0012720AK

